

CATERPILLAR INC  
Form 10-Q  
November 02, 2016  
Table of Contents

UNITED STATES  
SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION  
Washington, D.C. 20549

FORM 10-Q

☒ QUARTERLY REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934

For the quarterly period ended September 30, 2016

OR

☐ TRANSITION REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934

For the transition period from \_\_\_\_\_ to \_\_\_\_\_

Commission File Number: 1-768

CATERPILLAR INC.

(Exact name of registrant as specified in its charter)

Delaware 37-0602744

(State or other jurisdiction of incorporation) (IRS Employer I.D. No.)

100 NE Adams Street, Peoria, Illinois 61629  
(Address of principal executive offices) (Zip Code)

Registrant's telephone number, including area code:  
(309) 675-1000

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant (1) has filed all reports required to be filed by Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the registrant was required to file such reports), and (2) has been subject to such filing requirements for the past 90 days. Yes ☒ No ☐

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant has submitted electronically and posted on its corporate Web site, if any, every Interactive Data File required to be submitted and posted pursuant to Rule 405 of Regulation S-T (§232.405 of this chapter) during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the registrant was required to submit and post such files). Yes ☒ No ☐

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a large accelerated filer, an accelerated filer, a non-accelerated filer, or a smaller reporting company. See definitions of "large accelerated filer", "accelerated filer" and "smaller reporting company" in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act. (Check one):

Large accelerated filer ☒ Accelerated filer ☐

Non-accelerated filer ☐ Smaller reporting company ☐

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a shell company (as defined in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act). Yes ☐ No ☒

At September 30, 2016, 585,072,585 shares of common stock of the registrant were outstanding.

Table of Contents

Table of Contents

Part I. Financial

Information

|                |                                                                                              |           |
|----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|
| <u>Item 1.</u> | <u>Financial Statements</u>                                                                  | <u>3</u>  |
| <u>Item 2.</u> | <u>Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations</u> | <u>65</u> |
| <u>Item 3.</u> | <u>Quantitative and Qualitative Disclosures About Market Risk</u>                            | <u>97</u> |
| <u>Item 4.</u> | <u>Controls and Procedures</u>                                                               | <u>97</u> |

Part II. Other Information

|                |                                                                    |           |
|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|
| <u>Item 1.</u> | <u>Legal Proceedings</u>                                           | <u>98</u> |
| Item 1A.       | Risk Factors                                                       | *         |
| <u>Item 2.</u> | <u>Unregistered Sales of Equity Securities and Use of Proceeds</u> | <u>98</u> |
| Item 3.        | Defaults Upon Senior Securities                                    | *         |
| Item 4.        | Mine Safety Disclosures                                            | *         |
| Item 5.        | Other Information                                                  | *         |
| <u>Item 6.</u> | <u>Exhibits</u>                                                    | <u>99</u> |

\* Item omitted because no answer is called for or item is not applicable.

Table of Contents

## Part I. FINANCIAL INFORMATION

## Item 1. Financial Statements

Caterpillar Inc.

Consolidated Statement of Results of Operations

(Unaudited)

(Dollars in millions except per share data)

|                                                                | Three Months<br>Ended<br>September 30 |          |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|----------|
|                                                                | 2016                                  | 2015     |
| Sales and revenues:                                            |                                       |          |
| Sales of Machinery, Energy & Transportation                    | \$8,463                               | \$10,285 |
| Revenues of Financial Products                                 | 697                                   | 677      |
| Total sales and revenues                                       | 9,160                                 | 10,962   |
| Operating costs:                                               |                                       |          |
| Cost of goods sold                                             | 6,527                                 | 7,872    |
| Selling, general and administrative expenses                   | 992                                   | 1,129    |
| Research and development expenses                              | 453                                   | 513      |
| Interest expense of Financial Products                         | 147                                   | 142      |
| Other operating (income) expenses                              | 560                                   | 381      |
| Total operating costs                                          | 8,679                                 | 10,037   |
| Operating profit                                               | 481                                   | 925      |
| Interest expense excluding Financial Products                  | 126                                   | 127      |
| Other income (expense)                                         | 28                                    | (15 )    |
| Consolidated profit before taxes                               | 383                                   | 783      |
| Provision (benefit) for income taxes                           | 96                                    | 218      |
| Profit of consolidated companies                               | 287                                   | 565      |
| Equity in profit (loss) of unconsolidated affiliated companies | (4 )                                  | (3 )     |
| Profit of consolidated and affiliated companies                | 283                                   | 562      |
| Less: Profit (loss) attributable to noncontrolling interests   | —                                     | 3        |
| Profit <sup>1</sup>                                            | \$283                                 | \$559    |
| Profit per common share                                        | \$0.48                                | \$0.95   |
| Profit per common share – diluted <sup>2</sup>                 | \$0.48                                | \$0.94   |
| Weighted-average common shares outstanding (millions)          |                                       |          |
| – Basic                                                        | 584.7                                 | 588.4    |

|                                          |       |       |
|------------------------------------------|-------|-------|
| – Diluted <sup>2</sup>                   | 589.6 | 594.8 |
| Cash dividends declared per common share | \$—   | \$—   |

<sup>1</sup> Profit attributable to common stockholders.

<sup>2</sup> Diluted by assumed exercise of stock-based compensation awards using the treasury stock method.

See accompanying notes to Consolidated Financial Statements.

---

3

---

Table of Contents

Caterpillar Inc.

Consolidated Statement of Comprehensive Income

(Unaudited)

(Dollars in millions)

|                                                                                                         | Three<br>Months<br>Ended<br>September 30 |        |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|--------|
|                                                                                                         | 2016                                     | 2015   |
| Profit of consolidated and affiliated companies                                                         | \$283                                    | \$562  |
| Other comprehensive income (loss), net of tax:                                                          |                                          |        |
| Foreign currency translation, net of tax (provision)/benefit of: 2016 - \$4; 2015 - \$(5)               | 137                                      | (236 ) |
| Pension and other postretirement benefits:                                                              |                                          |        |
| Current year prior service credit (cost), net of tax (provision)/benefit of: 2016 - \$0; 2015 - \$(1)   | 2                                        | 1      |
| Amortization of prior service (credit) cost, net of tax (provision)/benefit of: 2016 - \$5; 2015 - \$5  | (10 )                                    | (8 )   |
| Derivative financial instruments:                                                                       |                                          |        |
| Gains (losses) deferred, net of tax (provision)/benefit of: 2016 - \$16; 2015 - \$7                     | (28 )                                    | (12 )  |
| (Gains) losses reclassified to earnings, net of tax (provision)/benefit of: 2016 - \$(2); 2015 - \$(11) | 6                                        | 20     |
| Available-for-sale securities:                                                                          |                                          |        |
| Gains (losses) deferred, net of tax (provision)/benefit of: 2016 - \$(1); 2015 - \$10                   | 5                                        | (15 )  |
| (Gains) losses reclassified to earnings, net of tax (provision)/benefit of: 2016 - \$3; 2015 - \$9      | (6 )                                     | (18 )  |
| Total other comprehensive income (loss), net of tax                                                     | 106                                      | (268 ) |
| Comprehensive income                                                                                    | 389                                      | 294    |
| Less: comprehensive income attributable to the noncontrolling interests                                 | —                                        | (2 )   |
| Comprehensive income attributable to stockholders                                                       | \$389                                    | \$292  |

See accompanying notes to Consolidated Financial Statements.

Table of Contents

Caterpillar Inc.

Consolidated Statement of Results of Operations

(Unaudited)

(Dollars in millions except per share data)

Nine Months  
Ended  
September 30  
2016      2015

Sales and revenues:

Sales of Machinery, Energy &amp; Transportation

\$26,888    \$33,829

Revenues of Financial Products

2,075      2,152

Total sales and revenues

28,963    35,981

Operating costs:

Cost of goods sold

20,768    25,306

Selling, general and administrative expenses

3,203      3,696

Research and development expenses

1,429      1,547

Interest expense of Financial Products

447        440

Other operating (income) expenses

1,356      1,032

Total operating costs

27,203    32,021

Operating profit

1,760      3,960

Interest expense excluding Financial Products

385        381

Other income (expense)

112        107

Consolidated profit before taxes

1,487      3,686

Provision (benefit) for income taxes

372        1,074

Profit of consolidated companies

1,115      2,612

Equity in profit (loss) of unconsolidated affiliated companies (7      ) 1

Profit of consolidated and affiliated companies

1,108      2,613

Less: Profit (loss) attributable to noncontrolling interests

4           7

Profit <sup>1</sup>

\$1,104    \$2,606

Profit per common share

\$1.89      \$4.36

Profit per common share – diluted<sup>2</sup>

\$1.88      \$4.30

Weighted-average common shares outstanding (millions)

– Basic

583.8      597.9

– Diluted<sup>3</sup>

588.7      605.3

Cash dividends declared per common share

\$1.54      \$1.47

<sup>1</sup> Profit attributable to common stockholders.

<sup>2</sup> Diluted by assumed exercise of stock-based compensation awards using the treasury stock method.

See accompanying notes to Consolidated Financial Statements.

---

5

---

Table of Contents

Caterpillar Inc.

Consolidated Statement of Comprehensive Income

(Unaudited)

(Dollars in millions)

|                                                                                                          | Nine Months<br>Ended<br>September 30 |         |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|---------|
|                                                                                                          | 2016                                 | 2015    |
| Profit of consolidated and affiliated companies                                                          | \$1,108                              | \$2,613 |
| Other comprehensive income (loss), net of tax:                                                           |                                      |         |
| Foreign currency translation, net of tax (provision)/benefit of: 2016 - \$16; 2015 - \$(60)              | 442                                  | (806 )  |
| Pension and other postretirement benefits:                                                               |                                      |         |
| Current year prior service credit (cost), net of tax (provision)/benefit of: 2016 - \$(69); 2015 - \$(1) | 119                                  | 1       |
| Amortization of prior service (credit) cost, net of tax (provision)/benefit of: 2016 - \$16; 2015 - \$14 | (29 )                                | (26 )   |
| Derivative financial instruments:                                                                        |                                      |         |
| Gains (losses) deferred, net of tax (provision)/benefit of: 2016 - \$21; 2015 - \$9                      | (37 )                                | (15 )   |
| (Gains) losses reclassified to earnings, net of tax (provision)/benefit of: 2016 - \$(8); 2015 - \$(40)  | 16                                   | 69      |
| Available-for-sale securities:                                                                           |                                      |         |
| Gains (losses) deferred, net of tax (provision)/benefit of: 2016 - \$(9); 2015 - \$10                    | 21                                   | (13 )   |
| (Gains) losses reclassified to earnings, net of tax (provision)/benefit of: 2016 - \$12; 2015 - \$10     | (24 )                                | (21 )   |
| Total other comprehensive income (loss), net of tax                                                      | 508                                  | (811 )  |
| Comprehensive income                                                                                     | 1,616                                | 1,802   |
| Less: comprehensive income attributable to the noncontrolling interests                                  | (4 )                                 | 2       |
| Comprehensive income attributable to stockholders                                                        | \$1,612                              | \$1,804 |

See accompanying notes to Consolidated Financial Statements.

Table of Contents

Caterpillar Inc.

Consolidated Statement of Financial Position

(Unaudited)

(Dollars in millions)

|                                                 | September 30,<br>2016 | December 31,<br>2015 |
|-------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|
| Assets                                          |                       |                      |
| Current assets:                                 |                       |                      |
| Cash and short-term investments                 | \$ 6,113              | \$ 6,460             |
| Receivables – trade and other                   | 5,797                 | 6,695                |
| Receivables – finance                           | 8,719                 | 8,991                |
| Prepaid expenses and other current assets       | 1,892                 | 1,662                |
| Inventories                                     | 9,478                 | 9,700                |
| Total current assets                            | 31,999                | 33,508               |
| Property, plant and equipment – net             | 15,680                | 16,090               |
| Long-term receivables – trade and other         | 1,102                 | 1,170                |
| Long-term receivables – finance                 | 13,835                | 13,651               |
| Noncurrent deferred and refundable income taxes | 2,579                 | 2,489                |
| Intangible assets                               | 2,453                 | 2,821                |
| Goodwill                                        | 6,725                 | 6,615                |
| Other assets                                    | 2,029                 | 1,998                |
| Total assets                                    | \$ 76,402             | \$ 78,342            |
| Liabilities                                     |                       |                      |
| Current liabilities:                            |                       |                      |
| Short-term borrowings:                          |                       |                      |
| Machinery, Energy & Transportation              | \$ 263                | \$ 9                 |
| Financial Products                              | 6,702                 | 6,958                |
| Accounts payable                                | 4,713                 | 5,023                |
| Accrued expenses                                | 3,022                 | 3,116                |
| Accrued wages, salaries and employee benefits   | 1,286                 | 1,994                |
| Customer advances                               | 1,161                 | 1,146                |
| Dividends payable                               | —                     | 448                  |
| Other current liabilities                       | 1,620                 | 1,671                |
| Long-term debt due within one year:             |                       |                      |
| Machinery, Energy & Transportation              | 553                   | 517                  |
| Financial Products                              | 5,970                 | 5,360                |
| Total current liabilities                       | 25,290                | 26,242               |
| Long-term debt due after one year:              |                       |                      |
| Machinery, Energy & Transportation              | 8,432                 | 8,960                |
| Financial Products                              | 15,190                | 16,209               |
| Liability for postemployment benefits           | 8,499                 | 8,843                |
| Other liabilities                               | 3,276                 | 3,203                |
| Total liabilities                               | 60,687                | 63,457               |
| Commitments and contingencies (Notes 10 and 13) |                       |                      |
| Stockholders' equity                            |                       |                      |

Edgar Filing: CATERPILLAR INC - Form 10-Q

Common stock of \$1.00 par value:

Authorized shares: 2,000,000,000

|                                                                       |       |       |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|-------|-------|
| Issued shares: (9/30/16 and 12/31/15 – 814,894,624) at paid-in amount | 5,266 | 5,238 |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|-------|-------|

|                                                                                      |         |           |   |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|-----------|---|
| Treasury stock (9/30/16 – 229,822,039 shares; 12/31/15 – 232,572,734 shares) at cost | (17,544 | ) (17,640 | ) |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|-----------|---|

|                                 |        |        |
|---------------------------------|--------|--------|
| Profit employed in the business | 29,450 | 29,246 |
|---------------------------------|--------|--------|

|                                               |        |          |   |
|-----------------------------------------------|--------|----------|---|
| Accumulated other comprehensive income (loss) | (1,527 | ) (2,035 | ) |
|-----------------------------------------------|--------|----------|---|

|                          |    |    |
|--------------------------|----|----|
| Noncontrolling interests | 70 | 76 |
|--------------------------|----|----|

|                            |        |        |
|----------------------------|--------|--------|
| Total stockholders' equity | 15,715 | 14,885 |
|----------------------------|--------|--------|

|                                            |           |           |
|--------------------------------------------|-----------|-----------|
| Total liabilities and stockholders' equity | \$ 76,402 | \$ 78,342 |
|--------------------------------------------|-----------|-----------|

See accompanying notes to Consolidated Financial Statements.

Table of Contents

Caterpillar Inc.

Consolidated Statement of Changes in Stockholders' Equity

(Unaudited)

(Dollars in millions)

|                                                                                  | Common<br>stock | Treasury<br>stock | Profit<br>employed<br>in the<br>business | Accumulated<br>other<br>comprehensive<br>income<br>(loss) | Noncontrolling<br>interests | Total    |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|-------------------|------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|----------|
| Nine Months Ended September 30, 2015                                             |                 |                   |                                          |                                                           |                             |          |
| Balance at December 31, 2014                                                     | \$ 5,016        | \$(15,726)        | \$28,515                                 | \$ (1,059 )                                               | \$ 80                       | \$16,826 |
| Profit of consolidated and affiliated companies                                  | —               | —                 | 2,606                                    | —                                                         | 7                           | 2,613    |
| Foreign currency translation, net of tax                                         | —               | —                 | —                                        | (797 )                                                    | (9 )                        | (806 )   |
| Pension and other postretirement benefits, net of tax                            | —               | —                 | —                                        | (25 )                                                     | —                           | (25 )    |
| Derivative financial instruments, net of tax                                     | —               | —                 | —                                        | 54                                                        | —                           | 54       |
| Available-for-sale securities, net of tax                                        | —               | —                 | —                                        | (34 )                                                     | —                           | (34 )    |
| Dividends declared                                                               | —               | —                 | (885 )                                   | —                                                         | —                           | (885 )   |
| Distribution to noncontrolling interests                                         | —               | —                 | —                                        | —                                                         | (7 )                        | (7 )     |
| Common shares issued from treasury stock for stock-based compensation: 2,843,506 | (75 )           | 109               | —                                        | —                                                         | —                           | 34       |
| Stock-based compensation expense                                                 | 240             | —                 | —                                        | —                                                         | —                           | 240      |
| Net excess tax benefits from stock-based compensation                            | 7               | —                 | —                                        | —                                                         | —                           | 7        |
| Common shares repurchased: 25,841,608 <sup>1</sup>                               | —               | (2,025 )          | —                                        | —                                                         | —                           | (2,025 ) |
| Other                                                                            | 2               | —                 | —                                        | —                                                         | 1                           | 3        |
| Balance at September 30, 2015                                                    | \$ 5,190        | \$(17,642)        | \$30,236                                 | \$ (1,861 )                                               | \$ 72                       | \$15,995 |
| Nine Months Ended September 30, 2016                                             |                 |                   |                                          |                                                           |                             |          |
| Balance at December 31, 2015                                                     | \$ 5,238        | \$(17,640)        | \$29,246                                 | \$ (2,035 )                                               | \$ 76                       | \$14,885 |
| Profit of consolidated and affiliated companies                                  | —               | —                 | 1,104                                    | —                                                         | 4                           | 1,108    |
| Foreign currency translation, net of tax                                         | —               | —                 | —                                        | 442                                                       | —                           | 442      |
| Pension and other postretirement benefits, net of tax                            | —               | —                 | —                                        | 90                                                        | —                           | 90       |
| Derivative financial instruments, net of tax                                     | —               | —                 | —                                        | (21 )                                                     | —                           | (21 )    |
| Available-for-sale securities, net of tax                                        | —               | —                 | —                                        | (3 )                                                      | —                           | (3 )     |
| Dividends declared                                                               | —               | —                 | (900 )                                   | —                                                         | —                           | (900 )   |
| Distribution to noncontrolling interests                                         | —               | —                 | —                                        | —                                                         | (10 )                       | (10 )    |
| Common shares issued from treasury stock for stock-based compensation: 2,750,695 | (150 )          | 96                | —                                        | —                                                         | —                           | (54 )    |
| Stock-based compensation expense                                                 | 187             | —                 | —                                        | —                                                         | —                           | 187      |
| Net excess tax benefits from stock-based compensation                            | (18 )           | —                 | —                                        | —                                                         | —                           | (18 )    |
| Other                                                                            | 9               | —                 | —                                        | —                                                         | —                           | 9        |
| Balance at September 30, 2016                                                    | \$ 5,266        | \$(17,544)        | \$29,450                                 | \$ (1,527 )                                               | \$ 70                       | \$15,715 |

<sup>1</sup> See Note 11 regarding shares repurchased.

See accompanying notes to Consolidated Financial Statements.

---

8

---

Table of Contents

Caterpillar Inc.

Consolidated Statement of Cash Flow

(Unaudited)

(Millions of dollars)

|                                                                            | Nine Months<br>Ended<br>September 30 |          |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|----------|
|                                                                            | 2016                                 | 2015     |
| Cash flow from operating activities:                                       |                                      |          |
| Profit of consolidated and affiliated companies                            | \$ 1,108                             | \$ 2,613 |
| Adjustments for non-cash items:                                            |                                      |          |
| Depreciation and amortization                                              | 2,255                                | 2,272    |
| Other                                                                      | 640                                  | 323      |
| Changes in assets and liabilities, net of acquisitions and divestitures:   |                                      |          |
| Receivables – trade and other                                              | 1,128                                | 614      |
| Inventories                                                                | 331                                  | 840      |
| Accounts payable                                                           | (163 )                               | (893 )   |
| Accrued expenses                                                           | (153 )                               | (25 )    |
| Accrued wages, salaries and employee benefits                              | (727 )                               | (704 )   |
| Customer advances                                                          | (24 )                                | (36 )    |
| Other assets – net                                                         | (141 )                               | 96       |
| Other liabilities – net                                                    | (291 )                               | (236 )   |
| Net cash provided by (used for) operating activities                       | 3,963                                | 4,864    |
| Cash flow from investing activities:                                       |                                      |          |
| Capital expenditures – excluding equipment leased to others                | (807 )                               | (946 )   |
| Expenditures for equipment leased to others                                | (1,393 )                             | (1,251 ) |
| Proceeds from disposals of leased assets and property, plant and equipment | 572                                  | 473      |
| Additions to finance receivables                                           | (6,911 )                             | (7,099 ) |
| Collections of finance receivables                                         | 6,968                                | 6,849    |
| Proceeds from sale of finance receivables                                  | 55                                   | 101      |
| Investments and acquisitions (net of cash acquired)                        | (72 )                                | (140 )   |
| Proceeds from sale of businesses and investments (net of cash sold)        | —                                    | 174      |
| Proceeds from sale of securities                                           | 304                                  | 238      |
| Investments in securities                                                  | (339 )                               | (296 )   |
| Other – net                                                                | 5                                    | (76 )    |
| Net cash provided by (used for) investing activities                       | (1,618 )                             | (1,973 ) |
| Cash flow from financing activities:                                       |                                      |          |
| Dividends paid                                                             | (1,348 )                             | (1,309 ) |
| Distribution to noncontrolling interests                                   | (8 )                                 | (7 )     |
| Common stock issued, including treasury shares reissued                    | (54 )                                | 34       |
| Treasury shares purchased                                                  | —                                    | (2,025 ) |
| Excess tax benefit from stock-based compensation                           | 12                                   | 20       |
| Proceeds from debt issued (original maturities greater than three months): |                                      |          |
| Machinery, Energy & Transportation                                         | 6                                    | 3        |
| Financial Products                                                         | 4,424                                | 4,079    |
| Payments on debt (original maturities greater than three months):          |                                      |          |

Edgar Filing: CATERPILLAR INC - Form 10-Q

|                                                                        |          |          |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|----------|
| Machinery, Energy & Transportation                                     | (525 )   | (513 )   |
| Financial Products                                                     | (5,077 ) | (6,259 ) |
| Short-term borrowings – net (original maturities three months or less) | (111 )   | 1,922    |
| Net cash provided by (used for) financing activities                   | (2,681 ) | (4,055 ) |
| Effect of exchange rate changes on cash                                | (11 )    | (131 )   |
| Increase (decrease) in cash and short-term investments                 | (347 )   | (1,295 ) |
| Cash and short-term investments at beginning of period                 | 6,460    | 7,341    |
| Cash and short-term investments at end of period                       | \$6,113  | \$6,046  |

All short-term investments, which consist primarily of highly liquid investments with original maturities of three months or less, are considered to be cash equivalents.

Non-cash activities: In September 2016, \$381 million of medium-term notes with varying interest rates and maturity dates were exchanged for \$366 million of 1.93% medium-term notes due in 2021 and \$15 million of cash. In addition, a debt exchange premium of \$33 million was paid and is included in the operating activities section of the Consolidated Statement of Cash Flow.

See accompanying notes to Consolidated Financial Statements.

Table of Contents

NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

(Unaudited)

1.A. Nature of operations

Information in our financial statements and related commentary are presented in the following categories:

Machinery, Energy & Transportation – Represents the aggregate total of Construction Industries, Resource Industries, Energy & Transportation and All Other operating segments and related corporate items and eliminations.

Financial Products – Primarily includes the company’s Financial Products Segment. This category includes Caterpillar Financial Services Corporation (Cat Financial), Caterpillar Financial Insurance Services (Insurance Services) and their respective subsidiaries.

B. Basis of presentation

In the opinion of management, the accompanying unaudited financial statements include all adjustments, consisting only of normal recurring adjustments, necessary for a fair statement of (a) the consolidated results of operations for the three and nine months ended September 30, 2016 and 2015, (b) the consolidated comprehensive income for the three and nine months ended September 30, 2016 and 2015, (c) the consolidated financial position at September 30, 2016 and December 31, 2015, (d) the consolidated changes in stockholders’ equity for the nine months ended September 30, 2016 and 2015 and (e) the consolidated cash flow for the nine months ended September 30, 2016 and 2015. The financial statements have been prepared in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles in the United States of America (U.S. GAAP) and pursuant to the rules and regulations of the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC).

Interim results are not necessarily indicative of results for a full year. The information included in this Form 10-Q should be read in conjunction with the audited financial statements and notes thereto included in our company’s annual report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2015 (2015 Form 10-K), which were retrospectively adjusted in the Current Report on Form 8-K filed with the SEC on May 16, 2016.

The December 31, 2015 financial position data included herein is derived from the audited consolidated financial statements included in the 2015 Form 10-K, which were retrospectively adjusted in the Current Report on Form 8-K filed with the SEC on May 16, 2016, but does not include all disclosures required by U.S. GAAP. Certain amounts for prior periods have been reclassified to conform to the current period financial statement presentation. See Note 1C, Note 2, Note 7 and Note 15 for more information.

Unconsolidated Variable Interest Entities (VIEs)

We have affiliates, suppliers and dealers that are VIEs of which we are not the primary beneficiary. Although we have provided financial support, we do not have the power to direct the activities that most significantly impact the economic performance of each entity.

Our maximum exposure to loss from VIEs for which we are not the primary beneficiary was as follows:

| (Millions of dollars)         | September 30, December 31, |       |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------|-------|
|                               | 2016                       | 2015  |
| Receivables - trade and other | \$ 48                      | \$ 19 |
| Receivables - finance         | 192                        | 466   |

|                                 |        |        |
|---------------------------------|--------|--------|
| Long-term receivables - finance | 253    | 62     |
| Other assets                    | 31     | 35     |
| Guarantees                      | 211    | 175    |
| Total                           | \$ 735 | \$ 757 |

Table of Contents

C. Change in Accounting Principle

Effective January 1, 2016, we changed our accounting principle for recognizing actuarial gains and losses and expected returns on plan assets for our defined benefit pension and other postretirement benefit plans. Prior to 2016, actuarial gains and losses were recognized as a component of Accumulated other comprehensive income (loss) and were generally amortized into earnings in future periods. Under the new principle, actuarial gains and losses will be immediately recognized through net benefit cost upon the annual remeasurement in the fourth quarter, or on an interim basis as triggering events warrant remeasurement. In addition, we have changed our policy for recognizing the expected returns on plan assets from a market-related value method (based on a three-year smoothing of asset returns) to a fair value method. We believe these changes are preferable as they accelerate the recognition of changes in fair value of plan assets and actuarial gains and losses in our Consolidated Statement of Results of Operations, provide greater transparency of our economic obligations in accounting results and better align with the fair value principles by recognizing the effects of economic and interest rate changes on pension and other postretirement benefit assets and liabilities in the year in which the gains and losses are incurred. These changes have been applied retrospectively to prior years. As of January 1, 2015, the cumulative effect of the change resulted in a decrease of \$5.4 billion in Profit employed in the business and a corresponding increase of \$5.4 billion in Accumulated other comprehensive income (loss), both net of tax of \$2.9 billion.

Table of Contents

Following are the changes to financial statement line items as a result of the accounting principle change for the periods presented in the accompanying unaudited consolidated financial statements:

## Consolidated Statement of Results of Operations

(Dollars in millions except per share data)

|                                                 | Three Months Ended September 30, 2016 |                            |                             | Three Months Ended September 30, 2015 |                     |                             |
|-------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------------|
|                                                 | As Reported                           | Previous Accounting Method | Effect of Accounting Change | Recast                                | Previously Reported | Effect of Accounting Change |
| Cost of goods sold                              | \$6,527                               | \$ 6,588                   | \$ (61 )                    | \$7,872                               | \$7,954             | \$ (82 )                    |
| Selling, general and administrative expenses    | \$992                                 | \$ 1,025                   | \$ (33 )                    | \$1,129                               | \$1,225             | \$ (96 )                    |
| Research and development expenses               | \$453                                 | \$ 464                     | \$ (11 )                    | \$513                                 | \$534               | \$ (21 )                    |
| Other operating (income) expenses               | \$560                                 | \$ 560                     | \$ —                        | \$381                                 | \$394               | \$ (13 )                    |
| Total operating costs                           | \$8,679                               | \$ 8,784                   | \$ (105 )                   | \$10,037                              | \$10,249            | \$ (212 )                   |
| Operating profit                                | \$481                                 | \$ 376                     | \$ 105                      | \$925                                 | \$713               | \$ 212                      |
| Other income (expense)                          | \$28                                  | \$ 13                      | \$ 15                       | \$(15 )                               | \$(68 )             | \$ 53                       |
| Consolidated profit before taxes                | \$383                                 | \$ 263                     | \$ 120                      | \$783                                 | \$518               | \$ 265                      |
| Provision (benefit) for income taxes            | \$96                                  | \$ 55                      | \$ 41                       | \$218                                 | \$144               | \$ 74                       |
| Profit of consolidated companies                | \$287                                 | \$ 208                     | \$ 79                       | \$565                                 | \$374               | \$ 191                      |
| Profit of consolidated and affiliated companies | \$283                                 | \$ 204                     | \$ 79                       | \$562                                 | \$371               | \$ 191                      |
| Profit                                          | \$283                                 | \$ 204                     | \$ 79                       | \$559                                 | \$368               | \$ 191                      |
| Profit per common share                         | \$0.48                                | \$ 0.35                    | \$ 0.13                     | \$0.95                                | \$0.63              | \$ 0.32                     |
| Profit per common share - diluted               | \$0.48                                | \$ 0.35                    | \$ 0.13                     | \$0.94                                | \$0.62              | \$ 0.32                     |

  

|                                                 | Nine Months Ended September 30, 2016 |                            |                             | Nine Months Ended September 30, 2015 |                     |                             |
|-------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------------|
|                                                 | As Reported                          | Previous Accounting Method | Effect of Accounting Change | Recast                               | Previously Reported | Effect of Accounting Change |
| Cost of goods sold                              | \$20,768                             | \$ 20,949                  | \$ (181 )                   | \$25,306                             | \$25,559            | \$ (253 )                   |
| Selling, general and administrative expenses    | \$3,203                              | \$ 3,305                   | \$ (102 )                   | \$3,696                              | \$3,932             | \$ (236 )                   |
| Research and development expenses               | \$1,429                              | \$ 1,461                   | \$ (32 )                    | \$1,547                              | \$1,612             | \$ (65 )                    |
| Other operating (income) expenses               | \$1,356                              | \$ 1,356                   | \$ —                        | \$1,032                              | \$1,068             | \$ (36 )                    |
| Total operating costs                           | \$27,203                             | \$ 27,518                  | \$ (315 )                   | \$32,021                             | \$32,611            | \$ (590 )                   |
| Operating profit                                | \$1,760                              | \$ 1,445                   | \$ 315                      | \$3,960                              | \$3,370             | \$ 590                      |
| Other income (expense)                          | \$112                                | \$ 60                      | \$ 52                       | \$107                                | \$76                | \$ 31                       |
| Consolidated profit before taxes                | \$1,487                              | \$ 1,120                   | \$ 367                      | \$3,686                              | \$3,065             | \$ 621                      |
| Provision (benefit) for income taxes            | \$372                                | \$ 252                     | \$ 120                      | \$1,074                              | \$870               | \$ 204                      |
| Profit of consolidated companies                | \$1,115                              | \$ 868                     | \$ 247                      | \$2,612                              | \$2,195             | \$ 417                      |
| Profit of consolidated and affiliated companies | \$1,108                              | \$ 861                     | \$ 247                      | \$2,613                              | \$2,196             | \$ 417                      |
| Profit                                          | \$1,104                              | \$ 857                     | \$ 247                      | \$2,606                              | \$2,189             | \$ 417                      |
| Profit per common share                         | \$1.89                               | \$ 1.47                    | \$ 0.42                     | \$4.36                               | \$3.66              | \$ 0.70                     |
| Profit per common share - diluted               | \$1.88                               | \$ 1.46                    | \$ 0.42                     | \$4.30                               | \$3.62              | \$ 0.68                     |



Table of ContentsConsolidated Statement of Comprehensive Income  
(Dollars in millions)

|                                                     | Three Months Ended September 30, 2016 |                            |                             | Three Months Ended September 30, 2015 |                     |                             |
|-----------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------------|
|                                                     | As Reported                           | Previous Accounting Method | Effect of Accounting Change | Recast                                | Previously Reported | Effect of Accounting Change |
| Profit of consolidated and affiliated companies     | \$283                                 | \$ 204                     | \$ 79                       | \$562                                 | \$ 371              | \$ 191                      |
| Foreign currency translation, net of tax            | \$137                                 | \$ 139                     | \$ (2 )                     | \$(236 )                              | \$(235 )            | \$ (1 )                     |
| Pension and other postretirement benefits:          |                                       |                            |                             |                                       |                     |                             |
| Current year actuarial gain (loss), net of tax      | \$—                                   | \$ (2 )                    | \$ 2                        | \$—                                   | \$ 44               | \$ (44 )                    |
| Amortization of actuarial (gain) loss, net of tax   | \$—                                   | \$ 79                      | \$ (79 )                    | \$—                                   | \$ 108              | \$ (108 )                   |
| Total other comprehensive income (loss), net of tax | \$106                                 | \$ 185                     | \$ (79 )                    | \$(268 )                              | \$(115 )            | \$ (153 )                   |
| Comprehensive income                                | \$389                                 | \$ 389                     | \$ —                        | \$294                                 | \$ 256              | \$ 38                       |
| Comprehensive income attributable to stockholders   | \$389                                 | \$ 389                     | \$ —                        | \$292                                 | \$ 254              | \$ 38                       |

|                                                     | Nine Months Ended September 30, 2016 |                            |                             | Nine Months Ended September 30, 2015 |                     |                             |
|-----------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------------|
|                                                     | As Reported                          | Previous Accounting Method | Effect of Accounting Change | Recast                               | Previously Reported | Effect of Accounting Change |
| Profit of consolidated and affiliated companies     | \$1,108                              | \$ 861                     | \$ 247                      | \$2,613                              | \$ 2,196            | \$ 417                      |
| Foreign currency translation, net of tax            | \$442                                | \$ 447                     | \$ (5 )                     | \$(806 )                             | \$(810 )            | \$ 4                        |
| Pension and other postretirement benefits:          |                                      |                            |                             |                                      |                     |                             |
| Current year actuarial gain (loss), net of tax      | \$—                                  | \$ (5 )                    | \$ 5                        | \$—                                  | \$ 68               | \$ (68 )                    |
| Amortization of actuarial (gain) loss, net of tax   | \$—                                  | \$ 237                     | \$ (237 )                   | \$—                                  | \$ 326              | \$ (326 )                   |
| Total other comprehensive income (loss), net of tax | \$508                                | \$ 745                     | \$ (237 )                   | \$(811 )                             | \$(421 )            | \$ (390 )                   |
| Comprehensive income                                | \$1,616                              | \$ 1,606                   | \$ 10                       | \$1,802                              | \$ 1,775            | \$ 27                       |
| Comprehensive income attributable to stockholders   | \$1,612                              | \$ 1,602                   | \$ 10                       | \$1,804                              | \$ 1,777            | \$ 27                       |

Consolidated Statement of Financial Position  
(Dollars in millions)

|                                                 | September 30, 2016 |                            |                             |
|-------------------------------------------------|--------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
|                                                 | As Reported        | Previous Accounting Method | Effect of Accounting Change |
| Noncurrent deferred and refundable income taxes | \$2,579            | \$ 2,590                   | \$ (11 )                    |
| Liability for postemployment benefits           | \$8,499            | \$ 8,520                   | \$ (21 )                    |
| Profit employed in the business                 | \$29,450           | \$ 34,165                  | \$ (4,715 )                 |
| Accumulated other comprehensive income (loss)   | \$(1,527 )         | \$(6,252 )                 | \$ 4,725                    |

December 31, 2015

Edgar Filing: CATERPILLAR INC - Form 10-Q

|                                               | Recast     | Previously<br>Reported | Effect of<br>Accounting<br>Change |
|-----------------------------------------------|------------|------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Profit employed in the business               | \$29,246   | \$ 34,208              | \$ (4,962 )                       |
| Accumulated other comprehensive income (loss) | \$(2,035 ) | \$(6,997 )             | \$ 4,962                          |

Table of ContentsConsolidated Statement of Changes in Stockholders' Equity  
(Dollars in millions)

|                                                       | Nine Months Ended September 30, 2016 |                            |                             |
|-------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
|                                                       | As Reported                          | Previous Accounting Method | Effect of Accounting Change |
| Profit of consolidated and affiliated companies       | \$ 1,108                             | \$ 861                     | \$ 247                      |
| Foreign currency translation, net of tax              | \$442                                | \$ 447                     | \$ (5 )                     |
| Pension and other postretirement benefits, net of tax | \$90                                 | \$ 322                     | \$ (232 )                   |
| Balance at September 30, 2016                         | \$15,715                             | \$ 15,705                  | \$ 10                       |

|                                                       | Nine Months Ended September 30, 2015 |                     |                             |
|-------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------------|
|                                                       | Recast                               | Previously Reported | Effect of Accounting Change |
| Profit of consolidated and affiliated companies       | \$2,613                              | \$ 2,196            | \$ 417                      |
| Foreign currency translation, net of tax              | \$(806 )                             | \$(810 )            | \$ 4                        |
| Pension and other postretirement benefits, net of tax | \$(25 )                              | \$ 369              | \$ (394 )                   |
| Balance at September 30, 2015                         | \$15,995                             | \$ 15,968           | \$ 27                       |

Consolidated Statement of Cash Flow  
(Millions of dollars)

|                                                 | Nine Months Ended September 30, 2016 |                            |                             |
|-------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
|                                                 | As Reported                          | Previous Accounting Method | Effect of Accounting Change |
| Cash flow from operating activities:            |                                      |                            |                             |
| Profit of consolidated and affiliated companies | \$ 1,108                             | \$ 861                     | \$ 247                      |
| Adjustments for non-cash items: Other           | \$640                                | \$ 692                     | \$ (52 )                    |
| Other assets – net                              | \$(141 )                             | \$(261 )                   | \$ 120                      |
| Other liabilities – net                         | \$(291 )                             | \$ 24                      | \$ (315 )                   |

|                                                 | Nine Months Ended September 30, 2015 |                     |                             |
|-------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------------|
|                                                 | Recast                               | Previously Reported | Effect of Accounting Change |
| Cash flow from operating activities:            |                                      |                     |                             |
| Profit of consolidated and affiliated companies | \$2,613                              | \$ 2,196            | \$ 417                      |
| Adjustments for non-cash items: Other           | \$323                                | \$ 354              | \$ (31 )                    |
| Other assets – net                              | \$96                                 | \$(108 )            | \$ 204                      |
| Other liabilities – net                         | \$(236 )                             | \$ 354              | \$ (590 )                   |

2. New accounting guidance

Revenue recognition – In May 2014, the Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) issued new revenue recognition guidance to provide a single, comprehensive revenue recognition model for all contracts with customers. Under the new guidance, an entity will recognize revenue to depict the transfer of promised goods or services to customers at an amount that the entity expects to be entitled to in exchange for those goods or services. A five step model has been introduced for an entity to apply when recognizing revenue. The new guidance also includes enhanced disclosure requirements, and is effective January 1, 2018, with early adoption permitted for January 1, 2017. Entities have the option to apply the new guidance under a retrospective approach to each prior reporting period presented, or a modified retrospective approach with the cumulative effect of initially applying the new guidance recognized at the date of initial application within the Consolidated Statement of Changes in Stockholders' Equity. We plan to adopt the new guidance effective January 1, 2018 and are in the process of evaluating the effect of the new guidance on our financial statements.

Table of Contents

Variable interest entities (VIE) – In February 2015, the FASB issued accounting guidance on the consolidation of VIEs. The new guidance revises previous guidance by establishing an analysis for determining whether a limited partnership or similar entity is a VIE and whether outsourced decision-maker fees are considered variable interests. In addition, the new guidance revises how a reporting entity evaluates economics and related parties when assessing who should consolidate a VIE. The guidance was effective January 1, 2016 and did not have a material impact on our financial statements.

Presentation of debt issuance costs – In April 2015, the FASB issued accounting guidance which requires debt issuance costs to be presented in the balance sheet as a direct deduction from the carrying value of the associated debt liability. Prior to the issuance of the new guidance, debt issuance costs were required to be presented in the balance sheet as an asset. The guidance was effective January 1, 2016 and was applied retrospectively. The adoption did not have a material impact on our financial statements.

Fair value disclosures for investments in certain entities that calculate net asset value per share – In May 2015, the FASB issued accounting guidance which removes the requirement to categorize within the fair value hierarchy investments measured at net asset value (or its equivalent) as a practical expedient for fair value. The new guidance requires that the amount of these investments continue to be disclosed to reconcile the fair value hierarchy disclosure to the balance sheet. The guidance was effective January 1, 2016 and was applied retrospectively. The adoption did not have a material impact on our financial statements.

Simplifying the measurement of inventory – In July 2015, the FASB issued accounting guidance which requires that inventory be measured at the lower of cost or net realizable value. Prior to the issuance of the new guidance, inventory was measured at the lower of cost or market. Replacing the concept of market with the single measurement of net realizable value is intended to create efficiencies for preparers. Inventory measured using the last-in, first-out (LIFO) method and the retail inventory method are not impacted by the new guidance. The guidance is effective January 1, 2017. We do not expect the adoption to have a material impact on our financial statements.

Simplifying the accounting for measurement-period adjustments – In September 2015, the FASB issued accounting guidance which eliminates the requirement for an acquirer in a business combination to restate prior period financial statements for measurement period adjustments. An acquirer in a business combination is required to report provisional amounts when measurements are incomplete at the end of the reporting period covering the business combination. Prior to the issuance of the new guidance, an acquirer was required to adjust such provisional amounts by restating prior period financial statements. Under the new guidance, the acquirer will recognize the measurement-period adjustment in the period the adjustment is determined. The guidance was effective January 1, 2016 and was applied prospectively. The adoption did not have a material impact on our financial statements.

Balance sheet classification of deferred taxes – In November 2015, the FASB issued accounting guidance that requires all deferred tax assets and liabilities, along with any related valuation allowance, to be classified as noncurrent on the Consolidated Statement of Financial Position. Previous guidance requires the deferred taxes for each jurisdiction to be presented as a net current asset or liability and net noncurrent asset or liability. As a result of the new guidance, each jurisdiction will now only have one net noncurrent deferred tax asset or liability. The new guidance does not change the existing requirement that only permits offsetting deferred tax assets and liabilities within a single jurisdiction. We had the option to apply the new guidance prospectively or retrospectively. The new guidance is effective January 1, 2017, with early adoption permitted. We adopted the new guidance effective January 1, 2016 and applied it retrospectively. The adoption resulted in the reclassification of current deferred tax assets and liabilities to noncurrent assets and liabilities on the Consolidated Statement of Financial Position. For the year ended December 31, 2015, Deferred and refundable income taxes were reduced by \$910 million (the remaining balance of \$616 million was reclassified to Prepaid expenses and other current assets), Noncurrent deferred and refundable income taxes were increased by \$835 million, Other current liabilities were reduced by \$59 million and Other liabilities were reduced by

\$16 million.

Recognition and measurement of financial assets and financial liabilities – In January 2016, the FASB issued accounting guidance that affects the accounting for equity investments, financial liabilities accounted for under the fair value option and the presentation and disclosure requirements for financial instruments. Under the new guidance, all equity investments in unconsolidated entities (other than those accounted for using the equity method of accounting) will generally be measured at fair value through earnings. There will no longer be an available-for-sale classification for equity securities with readily determinable fair values. For financial liabilities when the fair value option has been elected, changes in fair value due to instrument-specific credit risk will be recognized separately in other comprehensive income. In addition, the FASB clarified guidance related to the valuation allowance assessment when recognizing deferred tax

## Table of Contents

assets resulting from unrealized losses on available-for-sale debt securities. The new guidance is effective January 1, 2018, with the cumulative effect adjustment from initially applying the new guidance recognized in the Consolidated Statement of Financial Position as of the beginning of the year of adoption. The impact on our financial statements at the time of adoption will primarily be based on changes in the fair value of our available-for-sale equity securities subsequent to January 1, 2018, which will be recorded through earnings.

**Lease accounting** – In February 2016, the FASB issued accounting guidance that revises the accounting for leases. Under the new guidance, lessees are required to recognize a right-of-use asset and a lease liability for all leases. The new guidance will continue to classify leases as either financing or operating, with classification affecting the pattern of expense recognition. The accounting applied by a lessor under the new guidance will be substantially equivalent to current lease accounting guidance. The new guidance is effective January 1, 2019 with early adoption permitted. The new standard is required to be applied with a modified retrospective approach to each prior reporting period presented and provides for certain practical expedients. We are in the process of evaluating the effect of the new guidance on our financial statements.

**Stock-based compensation** – In March 2016, the FASB issued accounting guidance to simplify several aspects of the accounting for share-based payments. The new guidance changes how reporting entities account for certain aspects of share-based payments, including the accounting for income taxes and the classification of the tax impact on the Consolidated Statement of Cash Flow. Under the new guidance all excess tax benefits and deficiencies during the period are to be recognized in income (rather than equity) on a prospective basis. The guidance removes the requirement to delay recognition of excess tax benefits until it reduces income taxes currently payable. This change is required to be applied on a modified retrospective basis, resulting in a cumulative-effect adjustment to opening retained earnings in the period of adoption. In addition, Cash flows related to excess tax benefits will be included in Cash provided by operating activities and will no longer be separately classified as a financing activity. We plan to adopt this change retrospectively. The new guidance is effective January 1, 2017 with early adoption permitted. We plan to adopt the new guidance effective January 1, 2017, and we do not expect the adoption to have a material impact on our financial statements.

**Measurement of credit losses on financial instruments** – In June 2016, the FASB issued accounting guidance to introduce a new model for recognizing credit losses on financial instruments based on an estimate of current expected credit losses. The new guidance will apply to loans, accounts receivable, trade receivables, other financial assets measured at amortized cost, loan commitments and other off-balance sheet credit exposures. The new guidance will also apply to debt securities and other financial assets measured at fair value through other comprehensive income. The new guidance is effective January 1, 2020, with early adoption permitted beginning January 1, 2019. We are in the process of evaluating the effect of the new guidance on our financial statements.

**Classification for certain cash receipts and cash payments** – In August 2016, the FASB issued accounting guidance related to the presentation and classification of certain transactions in the statement of cash flows where diversity in practice exists. The guidance is effective January 1, 2018 with early adoption permitted. We do not expect the adoption to have a material impact on our financial statements.

**Tax accounting for intra-entity asset transfers** – In October 2016, the FASB issued accounting guidance that will require the tax effects of intra-entity asset transfers to be recognized in the period when the transfer occurs. Under current guidance, the tax effects of intra-entity sales of assets are deferred until the transferred asset is sold to a third party or otherwise recovered through use. The new guidance does not apply to intra-entity transfers of inventory. The guidance is effective January 1, 2018 with early adoption permitted and is required to be applied on a modified retrospective basis through a cumulative effect adjustment to retained earnings as of the beginning of the period of adoption. We are in the process of evaluating the effect of the new guidance on our financial statements.

3. Stock-based compensation

Accounting for stock-based compensation requires that the cost resulting from all stock-based payments be recognized in the financial statements based on the grant date fair value of the award. Our stock-based compensation primarily consists of stock options, restricted stock units (RSUs), performance-based restricted stock units (PRSUs) and stock-settled stock appreciation rights (SARs). Awards granted prior to 2015 generally vest three years after the date of grant (cliff vesting). The awards granted in 2015 and 2016 generally vest according to a three-year graded vesting schedule. Beginning in 2015, PRSUs were granted. PRSUs generally have a three-year performance period and cliff vest at the end of the period based upon achievement of performance targets established at the time of grant.

Table of Contents

Upon separation from service, if the participant is 55 years of age or older with more than five years of service, the participant meets the criteria for a "Long Service Separation" and all outstanding stock options, SARs and RSUs will vest. Outstanding PRSUs granted to employees with a "Long Service Separation" will vest at the end of the performance period based upon achievement of the performance target. For awards granted prior to 2016, if the "Long Service Separation" criteria are met, the vested options/SARs will have a life that is the lesser of ten years from the original grant date or five years from the separation date. For awards granted in 2016, the vested options/SARs will have a life equal to ten years from the original grant date.

We recognized pretax stock-based compensation expense in the amount of \$41 million and \$187 million for the three and nine months ended September 30, 2016, respectively and \$48 million and \$240 million for the three and nine months ended September 30, 2015, respectively.

The following table illustrates the type and fair value of the stock-based compensation awards granted during the nine months ended September 30, 2016 and 2015, respectively:

|               | Nine Months Ended September 30, 2016 |                                             |                                               | Nine Months Ended September 30, 2015 |                                             |                                               |
|---------------|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
|               | Shares<br>Granted                    | Weighted-Average<br>Fair Value Per<br>Share | Weighted-Average<br>Grant Date Stock<br>Price | Shares<br>Granted                    | Weighted-Average<br>Fair Value Per<br>Share | Weighted-Average<br>Grant Date Stock<br>Price |
| Stock options | 4,243,272                            | \$ 20.64                                    | \$ 74.77                                      | 7,939,497                            | \$ 23.61                                    | \$ 83.34                                      |
| RSUs          | 1,085,505                            | \$ 68.04                                    | \$ 74.77                                      | 1,690,661                            | \$ 77.55                                    | \$ 83.02                                      |
| PRSUs         | 614,347                              | \$ 64.71                                    | \$ 74.77                                      | 132,068                              | \$ 77.47                                    | \$ 82.90                                      |

The following table provides the assumptions used in determining the fair value of the stock-based awards for the nine months ended September 30, 2016 and 2015, respectively:

|                                   | Grant Year |            |
|-----------------------------------|------------|------------|
|                                   | 2016       | 2015       |
| Weighted-average dividend yield   | 3.23%      | 2.27%      |
| Weighted-average volatility       | 31.1%      | 28.4%      |
| Range of volatilities             | 22.5-33.4% | 19.9-35.9% |
| Range of risk-free interest rates | 0.62-1.73% | 0.22-2.08% |
| Weighted-average expected lives   | 8 years    | 8 years    |

As of September 30, 2016, the total remaining unrecognized compensation expense related to nonvested stock-based compensation awards was \$213 million, which will be amortized over the weighted-average remaining requisite service periods of approximately 1.8 years.

#### 4. Derivative financial instruments and risk management

Our earnings and cash flow are subject to fluctuations due to changes in foreign currency exchange rates, interest rates and commodity prices. Our Risk Management Policy (policy) allows for the use of derivative financial instruments to prudently manage foreign currency exchange rate, interest rate and commodity price exposures. Our policy specifies that derivatives are not to be used for speculative purposes. Derivatives that we use are primarily foreign currency forward, option and cross currency contracts, interest rate contracts and commodity forward and option contracts. Our

derivative activities are subject to the management, direction and control of our senior financial officers. Risk management practices, including the use of financial derivative instruments, are presented to the Audit Committee of the Board of Directors at least annually.

All derivatives are recognized on the Consolidated Statement of Financial Position at their fair value. On the date the derivative contract is entered into, we designate the derivative as (1) a hedge of the fair value of a recognized asset or liability (fair value hedge), (2) a hedge of a forecasted transaction or the variability of cash flow (cash flow hedge) or (3) an undesignated instrument. Changes in the fair value of a derivative that is qualified, designated and highly effective as a fair value hedge, along with the gain or loss on the hedged recognized asset or liability that is attributable to the

## Table of Contents

hedged risk, are recorded in current earnings. Changes in the fair value of a derivative that is qualified, designated and highly effective as a cash flow hedge are recorded in Accumulated other comprehensive income (loss) (AOCI), to the extent effective, on the Consolidated Statement of Financial Position until they are reclassified to earnings in the same period or periods during which the hedged transaction affects earnings. Changes in the fair value of undesignated derivative instruments and the ineffective portion of designated derivative instruments are reported in current earnings. Cash flows from designated derivative financial instruments are classified within the same category as the item being hedged on the Consolidated Statement of Cash Flow. Cash flows from undesignated derivative financial instruments are included in the investing category on the Consolidated Statement of Cash Flow.

We formally document all relationships between hedging instruments and hedged items, as well as the risk-management objective and strategy for undertaking various hedge transactions. This process includes linking all derivatives that are designated as fair value hedges to specific assets and liabilities on the Consolidated Statement of Financial Position and linking cash flow hedges to specific forecasted transactions or variability of cash flow.

We also formally assess, both at the hedge's inception and on an ongoing basis, whether the designated derivatives that are used in hedging transactions are highly effective in offsetting changes in fair values or cash flow of hedged items. When a derivative is determined not to be highly effective as a hedge or the underlying hedged transaction is no longer probable, we discontinue hedge accounting prospectively, in accordance with the derecognition criteria for hedge accounting.

### Foreign Currency Exchange Rate Risk

Foreign currency exchange rate movements create a degree of risk by affecting the U.S. dollar value of sales made and costs incurred in foreign currencies. Movements in foreign currency rates also affect our competitive position as these changes may affect business practices and/or pricing strategies of non-U.S.-based competitors. Additionally, we have balance sheet positions denominated in foreign currencies, thereby creating exposure to movements in exchange rates.

Our Machinery, Energy & Transportation operations purchase, manufacture and sell products in many locations around the world. As we have a diversified revenue and cost base, we manage our future foreign currency cash flow exposure on a net basis. We use foreign currency forward and option contracts to manage unmatched foreign currency cash inflow and outflow. Our objective is to minimize the risk of exchange rate movements that would reduce the U.S. dollar value of our foreign currency cash flow. Our policy allows for managing anticipated foreign currency cash flow for up to five years. As of September 30, 2016, the maximum term of these outstanding contracts was approximately 51 months.

We generally designate as cash flow hedges at inception of the contract any Australian dollar, Brazilian real, British pound, Canadian dollar, Chinese yuan, euro, Indian rupee, Japanese yen, Mexican peso, Norwegian krona, Singapore dollar, Swiss franc or Thailand baht forward or option contracts that meet the requirements for hedge accounting and the maturity extends beyond the current quarter-end. Designation is performed on a specific exposure basis to support hedge accounting. The remainder of Machinery, Energy & Transportation foreign currency contracts are undesignated.

As of September 30, 2016, \$19 million of deferred net losses, net of tax, included in equity (AOCI in the Consolidated Statement of Financial Position), are expected to be reclassified to current earnings (Other income (expense) in the Consolidated Statement of Results of Operations) over the next twelve months when earnings are affected by the hedged transactions. The actual amount recorded in Other income (expense) will vary based on exchange rates at the time the hedged transactions impact earnings.

In managing foreign currency risk for our Financial Products operations, our objective is to minimize earnings volatility resulting from conversion and the remeasurement of net foreign currency balance sheet positions, and future transactions denominated in foreign currencies. Our policy allows the use of foreign currency forward, option and cross currency contracts to offset the risk of currency mismatch between our assets and liabilities, and exchange rate risk associated with future transactions denominated in foreign currencies. Our foreign currency forward, option and cross currency contracts are primarily undesignated. We designate fixed-to-fixed cross currency contracts as cash flow hedges to protect against movements in exchange rates on foreign currency fixed rate assets and liabilities.

#### Interest Rate Risk

Interest rate movements create a degree of risk by affecting the amount of our interest payments and the value of our fixed-rate debt. Our practice is to use interest rate contracts to manage our exposure to interest rate changes.

## Table of Contents

Our Machinery, Energy & Transportation operations generally use fixed-rate debt as a source of funding. Our objective is to minimize the cost of borrowed funds. Our policy allows us to enter into fixed-to-floating interest rate contracts and forward rate agreements to meet that objective. We designate fixed-to-floating interest rate contracts as fair value hedges at inception of the contract, and we designate certain forward rate agreements as cash flow hedges at inception of the contract.

As of September 30, 2016, \$4 million of deferred net losses, net of tax, included in equity (AOCI in the Consolidated Statement of Financial Position), related to Machinery, Energy & Transportation forward rate agreements, are expected to be reclassified to current earnings (Interest expense excluding Financial Products in the Consolidated Statement of Results of Operations) over the next twelve months.

Financial Products operations has a match-funding policy that addresses interest rate risk by aligning the interest rate profile (fixed or floating rate) of Cat Financial's debt portfolio with the interest rate profile of their receivables portfolio within predetermined ranges on an ongoing basis. In connection with that policy, we use interest rate derivative instruments to modify the debt structure to match assets within the receivables portfolio. This matched funding reduces the volatility of margins between interest-bearing assets and interest-bearing liabilities, regardless of which direction interest rates move.

Our policy allows us to use fixed-to-floating, floating-to-fixed and floating-to-floating interest rate contracts to meet the match-funding objective. We designate fixed-to-floating interest rate contracts as fair value hedges to protect debt against changes in fair value due to changes in the benchmark interest rate. We designate most floating-to-fixed interest rate contracts as cash flow hedges to protect against the variability of cash flows due to changes in the benchmark interest rate.

As of September 30, 2016, less than \$1 million of deferred net gains, net of tax, included in equity (AOCI in the Consolidated Statement of Financial Position), related to Financial Products floating-to-fixed interest rate contracts, are expected to be reclassified to current earnings (Interest expense of Financial Products in the Consolidated Statement of Results of Operations) over the next twelve months. The actual amount recorded in Interest expense of Financial Products will vary based on interest rates at the time the hedged transactions impact earnings.

We have, at certain times, liquidated fixed-to-floating and floating-to-fixed interest rate contracts at both Machinery, Energy & Transportation and Financial Products. The gains or losses associated with these contracts at the time of liquidation are amortized into earnings over the original term of the previously designated hedged item.

## Commodity Price Risk

Commodity price movements create a degree of risk by affecting the price we must pay for certain raw material. Our policy is to use commodity forward and option contracts to manage the commodity risk and reduce the cost of purchased materials.

Our Machinery, Energy & Transportation operations purchase base and precious metals embedded in the components we purchase from suppliers. Our suppliers pass on to us price changes in the commodity portion of the component cost. In addition, we are subject to price changes on energy products such as natural gas and diesel fuel purchased for operational use.

Our objective is to minimize volatility in the price of these commodities. Our policy allows us to enter into commodity forward and option contracts to lock in the purchase price of a portion of these commodities within a five-year horizon. All such commodity forward and option contracts are undesignated.



# Table of Contents

The location and fair value of derivative instruments reported in the Consolidated Statement of Financial Position are as follows:

| (Millions of dollars)              | Consolidated Statement of Financial<br>Position Location | Asset (Liability) Fair<br>Value<br>September 30,<br>2016 | December 31,<br>2015 |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|
| Designated derivatives             |                                                          |                                                          |                      |
| Foreign exchange contracts         |                                                          |                                                          |                      |
| Machinery, Energy & Transportation | Receivables – trade and other                            | \$ 24                                                    | \$ 12                |
| Machinery, Energy & Transportation | Long-term receivables – trade and other                  | 1                                                        | —                    |
| Machinery, Energy & Transportation | Accrued expenses                                         | (55 )                                                    | (25 )                |
| Machinery, Energy & Transportation | Other liabilities                                        | (18 )                                                    | —                    |
| Financial Products                 | Long-term receivables – trade and other                  | 4                                                        | —                    |
| Financial Products                 | Accrued expenses                                         | (15 )                                                    | —                    |
| Interest rate contracts            |                                                          |                                                          |                      |
| Financial Products                 | Receivables – trade and other                            | —                                                        | 1                    |
| Financial Products                 | Long-term receivables – trade and other                  | 5                                                        | 51                   |
| Financial Products                 | Accrued expenses                                         | (2 )                                                     | (4 )                 |
|                                    |                                                          | \$ (56 )                                                 | \$ 35                |
| Undesignated derivatives           |                                                          |                                                          |                      |
| Foreign exchange contracts         |                                                          |                                                          |                      |
| Machinery, Energy & Transportation | Receivables – trade and other                            | \$ 3                                                     | \$ 2                 |
| Machinery, Energy & Transportation | Accrued expenses                                         | (7 )                                                     | (9 )                 |
| Financial Products                 | Receivables – trade and other                            | 2                                                        | 3                    |
| Financial Products                 | Long-term receivables – trade and other                  | 28                                                       | 36                   |
| Financial Products                 | Accrued expenses                                         | (5 )                                                     | (6 )                 |
| Commodity contracts                |                                                          |                                                          |                      |
| Machinery, Energy & Transportation | Receivables – trade and other                            | 6                                                        | —                    |
| Machinery, Energy & Transportation | Accrued expenses                                         | —                                                        | (12 )                |
|                                    |                                                          | \$ 27                                                    | \$ 14                |

The total notional amounts of the derivative instruments are as follows:

| (Millions of dollars)              | September 30,<br>2016 | December 31,<br>2015 |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|
| Machinery, Energy & Transportation | \$ 2,200              | \$ 2,040             |
| Financial Products                 | \$ 2,909              | \$ 3,539             |

The notional amounts of the derivative financial instruments do not represent amounts exchanged by the parties. The amounts exchanged by the parties are calculated by reference to the notional amounts and by other terms of the derivatives, such as foreign currency exchange rates, interest rates or commodity prices.



## Table of Contents

The effect of derivatives designated as hedging instruments on the Consolidated Statement of Results of Operations is as follows:

### Fair Value Hedges

|                         |                        | Three Months Ended<br>September 30, 2016 |                              | Three Months Ended<br>September 30, 2015 |                              |
|-------------------------|------------------------|------------------------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| (Millions of dollars)   | Classification         | Gains (Losses) on Derivatives            | Gains (Losses) on Borrowings | Gains (Losses) on Derivatives            | Gains (Losses) on Borrowings |
|                         |                        |                                          |                              |                                          |                              |
| Interest rate contracts |                        |                                          |                              |                                          |                              |
| Financial Products      | Other income (expense) | \$ (11 )                                 | \$ 11                        | \$ 3                                     | \$ (3 )                      |
|                         |                        | \$ (11 )                                 | \$ 11                        | \$ 3                                     | \$ (3 )                      |

|                         |                        | Nine Months Ended<br>September 30, 2016 |                   | Nine Months Ended<br>September 30, 2015 |                   |
|-------------------------|------------------------|-----------------------------------------|-------------------|-----------------------------------------|-------------------|
|                         | Classification         | Gains<br>(Losses)                       | Gains<br>(Losses) | Gains<br>(Losses)                       | Gains<br>(Losses) |
|                         |                        | on                                      | on                | on                                      | on                |
|                         |                        | Derivatives                             | Borrowings        | Derivatives                             | Borrowings        |
| Interest rate contracts |                        |                                         |                   |                                         |                   |
| Financial Products      | Other income (expense) | \$ (11 )                                | \$ 10             | \$ (11)                                 | \$ 10             |
|                         |                        | \$ (11 )                                | \$ 10             | \$ (11)                                 | \$ 10             |

Table of Contents

## Cash Flow Hedges

|                                    |            | Three Months Ended September 30, 2016         |                |            |      |
|------------------------------------|------------|-----------------------------------------------|----------------|------------|------|
|                                    |            | Recognized in Earnings                        |                |            |      |
| (Millions of dollars)              | Amount     | Classification of                             | Amount of      | Recognized |      |
|                                    | of         | Gains (Losses)                                | Gains (Losses) | in         |      |
|                                    | Recognized | Reclassified from AOCI to Earnings            |                |            |      |
|                                    | in         |                                               |                |            |      |
|                                    | AOCI       |                                               |                |            |      |
|                                    | (Effective |                                               |                |            |      |
|                                    | Portion)   |                                               |                |            |      |
| Foreign exchange contracts         |            |                                               |                |            |      |
| Machinery, Energy & Transportation | \$(29)     | Other income (expense)                        | \$ 4           | \$         | —    |
| Financial Products                 | (17)       | Other income (expense)                        | (10)           | )          | —    |
| Interest rate contracts            |            |                                               |                |            |      |
| Machinery, Energy & Transportation | —          | Interest expense excluding Financial Products | (2)            | )          | —    |
| Financial Products                 | 2          | Interest expense of Financial Products        | —              | —          |      |
|                                    | \$(44)     |                                               | \$ (8)         | )          | \$ — |
|                                    |            | Three Months Ended September 30, 2015         |                |            |      |
|                                    |            | Recognized in Earnings                        |                |            |      |
|                                    | Amount     | Classification of                             | Amount of      | Recognized |      |
|                                    | of         | Gains (Losses)                                | Gains (Losses) | in         |      |
|                                    | Recognized | Reclassified from AOCI to Earnings            |                |            |      |
|                                    | in         |                                               |                |            |      |
|                                    | AOCI       |                                               |                |            |      |
|                                    | (Effective |                                               |                |            |      |
|                                    | Portion)   |                                               |                |            |      |
| Foreign exchange contracts         |            |                                               |                |            |      |
| Machinery, Energy & Transportation | \$(18)     | Other income (expense)                        | \$ (29)        | )          | \$ — |
| Interest rate contracts            |            |                                               |                |            |      |
| Machinery, Energy & Transportation | —          | Interest expense excluding Financial Products | (1)            | )          | —    |
| Financial Products                 | (1)        | Interest expense of Financial Products        | (1)            | )          | —    |
|                                    | \$(19)     |                                               | \$ (31)        | )          | \$ — |
|                                    |            | Nine Months Ended September 30, 2016          |                |            |      |
|                                    |            | Recognized in Earnings                        |                |            |      |
|                                    | Amount     | Classification of                             | Amount of      | Recognized |      |
|                                    | of         | Gains (Losses)                                | Gains (Losses) | in         |      |
|                                    | Recognized | Reclassified from AOCI to Earnings            |                |            |      |
|                                    | in         |                                               |                |            |      |
|                                    | AOCI       |                                               |                |            |      |
|                                    | (Effective |                                               |                |            |      |
|                                    | Portion)   |                                               |                |            |      |

Edgar Filing: CATERPILLAR INC - Form 10-Q

|                                    |        |                                               |         |
|------------------------------------|--------|-----------------------------------------------|---------|
| Foreign exchange contracts         |        |                                               |         |
| Machinery, Energy & Transportation | \$(35) | Other income (expense)                        | \$ —    |
| Financial Products                 | (23)   | Other income (expense)                        | (16)    |
| Interest rate contracts            |        |                                               |         |
| Machinery, Energy & Transportation | —      | Interest expense excluding Financial Products | (5)     |
| Financial Products                 | —      | Interest expense of Financial Products        | (3)     |
|                                    | \$(58) |                                               | \$ (24) |

Nine Months Ended September 30, 2015

Recognized in Earnings

|                                                                 |                                  |                                                             |                                              |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| Amount of Gains (Losses) Recognized in AOCI (Effective Portion) | Classification of Gains (Losses) | Amount of Gains (Losses) Reclassified from AOCI to Earnings | Recognized in Earnings (Ineffective Portion) |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|

|                                    |        |                                               |          |
|------------------------------------|--------|-----------------------------------------------|----------|
| Foreign exchange contracts         |        |                                               |          |
| Machinery, Energy & Transportation | \$(25) | Other income (expense)                        | \$ (101) |
| Interest rate contracts            |        |                                               |          |
| Machinery, Energy & Transportation | —      | Interest expense excluding Financial Products | (4)      |
| Financial Products                 | 1      | Interest expense of Financial Products        | (4)      |
|                                    | \$(24) |                                               | \$ (109) |

Table of Contents

The effect of derivatives not designated as hedging instruments on the Consolidated Statement of Results of Operations is as follows:

| (Millions of dollars)              | Classification of Gains (Losses) | Three<br>Months<br>Ended<br>September<br>30, 2016 | Three<br>Months<br>Ended<br>September<br>30, 2015 |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
|                                    |                                  |                                                   |                                                   |
| Foreign exchange contracts         |                                  |                                                   |                                                   |
| Machinery, Energy & Transportation | Other income (expense)           | \$ 2                                              | \$ 7                                              |
| Financial Products                 | Other income (expense)           | (5 )                                              | 6                                                 |
| Commodity contracts                |                                  |                                                   |                                                   |
| Machinery, Energy & Transportation | Other income (expense)           | 3                                                 | (8 )                                              |
|                                    |                                  | \$ —                                              | \$ 5                                              |
|                                    |                                  |                                                   |                                                   |
|                                    |                                  | Nine<br>Months<br>Ended<br>September<br>30, 2016  | Nine<br>Months<br>Ended<br>September<br>30, 2015  |
|                                    | Classification of Gains (Losses) |                                                   |                                                   |
| Foreign exchange contracts         |                                  |                                                   |                                                   |
| Machinery, Energy & Transportation | Other income (expense)           | \$ 24                                             | \$ (22 )                                          |
| Financial Products                 | Other income (expense)           | (33 )                                             | (18 )                                             |
| Commodity contracts                |                                  |                                                   |                                                   |
| Machinery, Energy & Transportation | Other income (expense)           | 9                                                 | (15 )                                             |
|                                    |                                  | \$ —                                              | \$ (55 )                                          |

We enter into International Swaps and Derivatives Association (ISDA) master netting agreements within Machinery, Energy & Transportation and Financial Products that permit the net settlement of amounts owed under their respective derivative contracts. Under these master netting agreements, net settlement generally permits the company or the counterparty to determine the net amount payable for contracts due on the same date and in the same currency for similar types of derivative transactions. The master netting agreements generally also provide for net settlement of all outstanding contracts with a counterparty in the case of an event of default or a termination event.

Collateral is generally not required of the counterparties or of our company under the master netting agreements. As of September 30, 2016 and December 31, 2015, no cash collateral was received or pledged under the master netting agreements.

Table of Contents

The effect of the net settlement provisions of the master netting agreements on our derivative balances upon an event of default or termination event is as follows:

| September 30, 2016                 |                                                 | Gross Amounts Not<br>Offset in the<br>Statement of<br>Financial Position         |                                                                                                    |                          |                                |                                 |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| (Millions of dollars)              | Gross<br>Amount of<br>Recognized<br>Assets      | Gross<br>Amounts<br>Offset in<br>the<br>Statement<br>of<br>Financial<br>Position | Net<br>Amount<br>of Assets<br>Presented<br>in the<br>Statement<br>of<br>Financial<br>Position      | Financial<br>Instruments | Cash<br>Collateral<br>Received | Net<br>Amount<br>of<br>Assets   |
| Derivatives                        |                                                 |                                                                                  |                                                                                                    |                          |                                |                                 |
| Machinery, Energy & Transportation | \$ 34                                           | \$ —                                                                             | \$ 34                                                                                              | \$ (33 )                 | \$ —                           | \$ 1                            |
| Financial Products                 | 39                                              | —                                                                                | 39                                                                                                 | (3 )                     | —                              | 36                              |
| Total                              | \$ 73                                           | \$ —                                                                             | \$ 73                                                                                              | \$ (36 )                 | \$ —                           | \$ 37                           |
| September 30, 2016                 |                                                 | Gross Amounts Not<br>Offset in the<br>Statement of<br>Financial Position         |                                                                                                    |                          |                                |                                 |
| (Millions of dollars)              | Gross<br>Amount of<br>Recognized<br>Liabilities | Gross<br>Amounts<br>Offset in<br>the<br>Statement<br>of<br>Financial<br>Position | Net<br>Amount of<br>Liabilities<br>Presented<br>in the<br>Statement<br>of<br>Financial<br>Position | Financial<br>Instruments | Cash<br>Collateral<br>Pledged  | Net<br>Amount of<br>Liabilities |
| Derivatives                        |                                                 |                                                                                  |                                                                                                    |                          |                                |                                 |
| Machinery, Energy & Transportation | \$ (80 )                                        | \$ —                                                                             | \$ (80 )                                                                                           | \$ 33                    | \$ —                           | \$ (47 )                        |
| Financial Products                 | (22 )                                           | —                                                                                | (22 )                                                                                              | 3                        | —                              | (19 )                           |
| Total                              | \$ (102 )                                       | \$ —                                                                             | \$ (102 )                                                                                          | \$ 36                    | \$ —                           | \$ (66 )                        |
| December 31, 2015                  |                                                 | Gross Amounts Not<br>Offset in the<br>Statement of<br>Financial Position         |                                                                                                    |                          |                                |                                 |
| (Millions of dollars)              | Gross<br>Amount of<br>Recognized<br>Assets      | Gross<br>Amounts<br>Offset in<br>the<br>Statement<br>of<br>Financial<br>Position | Net<br>Amount<br>of Assets<br>Presented<br>in the<br>Statement<br>of<br>Financial                  | Financial<br>Instruments | Cash<br>Collateral<br>Received | Net<br>Amount<br>of<br>Assets   |

Edgar Filing: CATERPILLAR INC - Form 10-Q

Position

Derivatives

|                                    |        |    |         |          |    |        |
|------------------------------------|--------|----|---------|----------|----|--------|
| Machinery, Energy & Transportation | \$ 14  | \$ | —\$ 14  | \$ (14 ) | \$ | —\$ —  |
| Financial Products                 | 91     | —  | 91      | (5 )     | —  | 86     |
| Total                              | \$ 105 | \$ | —\$ 105 | \$ (19 ) | \$ | —\$ 86 |

Gross Amounts Not

December 31, 2015

Offset in the

Statement of

Financial Position

| (Millions of dollars) | Gross<br>Amount of<br>Recognized<br>Liabilities | Gross<br>Amounts<br>Offset in<br>the<br>Statement<br>of<br>Financial<br>Position | Net<br>Amount of<br>Liabilities<br>Presented<br>in the<br>Statement<br>of<br>Financial<br>Position | Financial<br>Instruments | Cash<br>Collateral<br>Pledged | Net<br>Amount of<br>Liabilities |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------------------|
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------------------|

Derivatives

|                                    |          |    |           |       |    |           |
|------------------------------------|----------|----|-----------|-------|----|-----------|
| Machinery, Energy & Transportation | \$ (46 ) | \$ | —\$ (46 ) | \$ 14 | \$ | —\$ (32 ) |
| Financial Products                 | (10 )    | —  | (10 )     | 5     | —  | (5 )      |
| Total                              | \$ (56 ) | \$ | —\$ (56 ) | \$ 19 | \$ | —\$ (37 ) |

Table of Contents

## 5. Inventories

Inventories (principally using the last-in, first-out (LIFO) method) are comprised of the following:

| (Millions of dollars) | September 30,<br>2016 | December 31,<br>2015 |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|
| Raw materials         | \$ 2,359              | \$ 2,467             |
| Work-in-process       | 2,015                 | 1,857                |
| Finished goods        | 4,866                 | 5,122                |
| Supplies              | 238                   | 254                  |
| Total inventories     | \$ 9,478              | \$ 9,700             |

## 6. Investments in unconsolidated affiliated companies

Investments in unconsolidated affiliated companies, included in Other assets in the Consolidated Statement of Financial Position, were as follows:

Caterpillar's investments in unconsolidated affiliated companies:

| (Millions of dollars)                                    | September 30,<br>2016 | December 31,<br>2015 |
|----------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|
| Investments in equity method companies                   | \$ 192                | \$ 203               |
| Plus: Investments in cost method companies               | 55                    | 43                   |
| Total investments in unconsolidated affiliated companies | \$ 247                | \$ 246               |

In February 2015, we sold our 35 percent equity interest in the third party logistics business, formerly Caterpillar Logistics Services LLC, to an affiliate of The Goldman Sachs Group, Inc. and investment funds affiliated with Rhône Capital LLC for \$177 million, which was comprised of \$167 million in cash and a \$10 million note receivable included in Long-term receivables - trade and other in the Consolidated Statement of Financial Position. As a result of the sale, we recognized a pretax gain of \$120 million (included in Other income (expense)) and derecognized the carrying value of our noncontrolling interest of \$57 million, which was previously included in Other assets in the Consolidated Statement of Financial Position. The gain on the disposal is included as a reconciling item between Segment profit and Consolidated profit before taxes. The sale of this investment supports Caterpillar's increased focus on growth opportunities in its core businesses.

Table of Contents

## 7. Intangible assets and goodwill

## A. Intangible assets

Intangible assets are comprised of the following:

| (Millions of dollars)                | Weighted<br>Amortizable<br>Life (Years) | September 30, 2016          |                             |  | Net      |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|--|----------|
|                                      |                                         | Gross<br>Carrying<br>Amount | Accumulated<br>Amortization |  |          |
| Customer relationships               | 15                                      | \$2,424                     | \$ (915 )                   |  | \$ 1,509 |
| Intellectual property                | 11                                      | 1,515                       | (681 )                      |  | 834      |
| Other                                | 14                                      | 184                         | (74 )                       |  | 110      |
| Total finite-lived intangible assets | 14                                      | \$4,123                     | \$ (1,670 )                 |  | \$ 2,453 |
|                                      | Weighted<br>Amortizable<br>Life (Years) | December 31, 2015           |                             |  | Net      |
|                                      |                                         | Gross<br>Carrying<br>Amount | Accumulated<br>Amortization |  |          |
| Customer relationships               | 15                                      | \$2,489                     | \$ (809 )                   |  | \$ 1,680 |
| Intellectual property                | 11                                      | 1,660                       | (626 )                      |  | 1,034    |
| Other                                | 12                                      | 174                         | (67 )                       |  | 107      |
| Total finite-lived intangible assets | 14                                      | \$4,323                     | \$ (1,502 )                 |  | \$ 2,821 |

Gross customer relationship intangibles of \$96 million and related accumulated amortization of \$27 million as well as gross intellectual property intangibles of \$111 million and related accumulated amortization of \$48 million from the Resource Industries segment were impaired during the three months ended September 30, 2016. The fair value of these intangibles was determined to be insignificant based on an income approach using expected cash flows. The fair value determination is categorized as Level 3 in the fair value hierarchy due to its use of internal projections and unobservable measurement inputs. The total impairment of \$132 million was a result of restructuring activities and is included in Other operating (income) expense in Statement 1. See Note 18 for information on restructuring costs.

Amortization expense for the three and nine months ended September 30, 2016 was \$82 million and \$246 million, respectively. Amortization expense for the three and nine months ended September 30, 2015 was \$81 million and \$255 million, respectively. Amortization expense related to intangible assets is expected to be:

| (Millions of dollars) | Remaining Three Months of 2016 | 2017  | 2018  | 2019  | 2020  | Thereafter |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|------------|
|                       | \$79                           | \$316 | \$308 | \$306 | \$295 | \$1,149    |

## B. Goodwill

No goodwill was impaired during the three and nine months ended September 30, 2016 or 2015.

As discussed in Note 15, effective January 1, 2016, we revised our reportable segments in line with the changes to our organization structure. As a result of these changes, \$118 million of goodwill was reassigned to Energy & Transportation from All Other segments.



Table of Contents

The changes in carrying amount of goodwill by reportable segment for the nine months ended September 30, 2016 were as follows:

| (Millions of dollars)              | December 31,<br>2015 | Acquisitions | Other<br>Adjustments <sup>1</sup> | September 30,<br>2016 |
|------------------------------------|----------------------|--------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------|
| <b>Construction Industries</b>     |                      |              |                                   |                       |
| Goodwill                           | \$ 285               | \$ —         | \$ 30                             | \$ 315                |
| Impairments                        | (22 )                | —            | —                                 | (22 )                 |
| Net goodwill                       | 263                  | —            | 30                                | 293                   |
| <b>Resource Industries</b>         |                      |              |                                   |                       |
| Goodwill                           | 4,145                | —            | 36                                | 4,181                 |
| Impairments                        | (580 )               | —            | —                                 | (580 )                |
| Net goodwill                       | 3,565                | —            | 36                                | 3,601                 |
| <b>Energy &amp; Transportation</b> |                      |              |                                   |                       |
| Goodwill                           | 2,738                | 26           | 8                                 | 2,772                 |
| <b>All Other<sup>2</sup></b>       |                      |              |                                   |                       |
| Goodwill                           | 49                   | —            | 10                                | 59                    |
| <b>Consolidated total</b>          |                      |              |                                   |                       |
| Goodwill                           | 7,217                | 26           | 84                                | 7,327                 |
| Impairments                        | (602 )               | —            | —                                 | (602 )                |
| Net goodwill                       | \$ 6,615             | \$ 26        | \$ 84                             | \$ 6,725              |

<sup>1</sup> Other adjustments are comprised primarily of foreign currency translation.

<sup>2</sup> Includes All Other operating segments (See Note 15).

## 8. Investments in debt and equity securities

We have investments in certain debt and equity securities, primarily at Insurance Services, that have been classified as available-for-sale and recorded at fair value. In addition, Insurance Services has an equity security investment in a real estate investment trust (REIT) which is recorded at fair value based on the net asset value (NAV) of the investment. These investments are primarily included in Other assets in the Consolidated Statement of Financial Position. Unrealized gains and losses arising from the revaluation of debt and equity securities are included, net of applicable deferred income taxes, in equity (Accumulated other comprehensive income (loss) in the Consolidated Statement of Financial Position). Realized gains and losses on sales of investments are generally determined using the specific identification method for debt and equity securities and are included in Other income (expense) in the Consolidated Statement of Results of Operations.

Table of Contents

The cost basis and fair value of debt and equity securities were as follows:

| (Millions of dollars)                    | September 30, 2016 |                                      |            | December 31, 2015 |                                      |            |
|------------------------------------------|--------------------|--------------------------------------|------------|-------------------|--------------------------------------|------------|
|                                          | Cost Basis         | Unrealized Pretax Net Gains (Losses) | Fair Value | Cost Basis        | Unrealized Pretax Net Gains (Losses) | Fair Value |
| Government debt                          |                    |                                      |            |                   |                                      |            |
| U.S. treasury bonds                      | \$10               | \$ —                                 | \$10       | \$9               | \$ —                                 | \$9        |
| Other U.S. and non-U.S. government bonds | 67                 | 1                                    | 68         | 71                | 1                                    | 72         |
| Corporate bonds                          |                    |                                      |            |                   |                                      |            |
| Corporate bonds                          | 697                | 13                                   | 710        | 701               | 7                                    | 708        |
| Asset-backed securities                  | 134                | 1                                    | 135        | 129               | —                                    | 129        |
| Mortgage-backed debt securities          |                    |                                      |            |                   |                                      |            |
| U.S. governmental agency                 | 282                | 4                                    | 286        | 291               | 1                                    | 292        |
| Residential                              | 10                 | —                                    | 10         | 12                | —                                    | 12         |
| Commercial                               | 62                 | 1                                    | 63         | 59                | 2                                    | 61         |
| Equity securities                        |                    |                                      |            |                   |                                      |            |
| Large capitalization value               | 279                | 20                                   | 299        | 243               | 30                                   | 273        |
| Real estate investment trust (REIT)      | 70                 | 2                                    | 72         | 25                | —                                    | 25         |
| Smaller company growth                   | 47                 | 10                                   | 57         | 37                | 17                                   | 54         |
| Total                                    | \$1,658            | \$ 52                                | \$1,710    | \$1,577           | \$ 58                                | \$1,635    |

Table of Contents

Available-for-sale investments in an unrealized loss position that are not other-than-temporarily impaired:

| (Millions of dollars)           | September 30, 2016               |                   |                                |                   |            |                   |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------------|-------------------|--------------------------------|-------------------|------------|-------------------|
|                                 | Less than 12 months <sup>1</sup> |                   | 12 months or more <sup>1</sup> |                   | Total      |                   |
|                                 | Fair Value                       | Unrealized Losses | Fair Value                     | Unrealized Losses | Fair Value | Unrealized Losses |
| Corporate bonds                 |                                  |                   |                                |                   |            |                   |
| Asset-backed securities         | \$—                              | \$ —              | \$16                           | \$ 1              | \$16       | \$ 1              |
| Equity securities               |                                  |                   |                                |                   |            |                   |
| Large capitalization value      | 85                               | 6                 | 9                              | 1                 | 94         | 7                 |
| Small company growth            | 13                               | 3                 | —                              | —                 | 13         | 3                 |
| Total                           | \$98                             | \$ 9              | \$25                           | \$ 2              | \$123      | \$ 11             |
| (Millions of dollars)           | December 31, 2015                |                   |                                |                   |            |                   |
|                                 | Less than 12 months <sup>1</sup> |                   | 12 months or more <sup>1</sup> |                   | Total      |                   |
|                                 | Fair Value                       | Unrealized Losses | Fair Value                     | Unrealized Losses | Fair Value | Unrealized Losses |
| Corporate bonds                 |                                  |                   |                                |                   |            |                   |
| Corporate bonds                 | \$242                            | \$ 3              | \$27                           | \$ 1              | \$269      | \$ 4              |
| Asset-backed securities         | 84                               | 1                 | 10                             | 1                 | 94         | 2                 |
| Mortgage-backed debt securities |                                  |                   |                                |                   |            |                   |
| U.S. governmental agency        | 135                              | 1                 | 57                             | 1                 | 192        | 2                 |
| Equity securities               |                                  |                   |                                |                   |            |                   |
| Large capitalization value      | 97                               | 8                 | 2                              | —                 | 99         | 8                 |
| Smaller company growth          | 14                               | 1                 | —                              | —                 | 14         | 1                 |
| Total                           | \$572                            | \$ 14             | \$96                           | \$ 3              | \$668      | \$ 17             |

<sup>1</sup> Indicates length of time that individual securities have been in a continuous unrealized loss position.

**Corporate Bonds.** The unrealized losses on our investments in asset-backed securities relate to changes in interest rates and credit-related yield spreads since time of purchase. We do not intend to sell the investments and it is not likely that we will be required to sell the investments before recovery of their amortized cost basis. We do not consider these investments to be other-than-temporarily impaired as of September 30, 2016.

**Equity Securities.** The unrealized losses on our investments in equity securities relate to inherent risks of individual holdings and/or their respective sectors. We do not consider these investments to be other-than-temporarily impaired as of September 30, 2016.

Table of Contents

The cost basis and fair value of the available-for-sale debt securities at September 30, 2016, by contractual maturity, is shown below. Expected maturities will differ from contractual maturities because borrowers may have the right to prepay and creditors may have the right to call obligations.

| (Millions of dollars)                               | September 30,<br>2016 |               |
|-----------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|---------------|
|                                                     | Cost<br>Basis         | Fair<br>Value |
| Due in one year or less                             | \$209                 | \$210         |
| Due after one year through five years               | 622                   | 634           |
| Due after five years through ten years              | 50                    | 52            |
| Due after ten years                                 | 27                    | 27            |
| U.S. governmental agency mortgage-backed securities | 282                   | 286           |
| Residential mortgage-backed securities              | 10                    | 10            |
| Commercial mortgage-backed securities               | 62                    | 63            |
| Total debt securities – available-for-sale          | \$1,262               | \$1,282       |

## Sales of Securities:

| (Millions of dollars)                                       | Three<br>Months<br>Ended<br>September<br>30<br>2016 |       | Nine<br>Months<br>Ended<br>September<br>30<br>2015 |       |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|-------|----------------------------------------------------|-------|
|                                                             | 2016                                                | 2015  | 2016                                               | 2015  |
| Proceeds from the sale of available-for-sale securities     | \$109                                               | \$110 | \$304                                              | \$238 |
| Gross gains from the sale of available-for-sale securities  | \$10                                                | \$32  | \$43                                               | \$38  |
| Gross losses from the sale of available-for-sale securities | \$1                                                 | \$1   | \$3                                                | \$2   |

## 9. Postretirement benefits

## A. Pension and postretirement benefit costs

At December 31, 2015, we changed our method for calculating the service and interest cost components of net periodic benefit cost. Historically, these components were determined utilizing a single weighted-average discount rate based on the yield curve used to measure the benefit obligation at the beginning of the period. Beginning in 2016, we elected to utilize a full yield curve approach in the estimation of service and interest costs by applying the specific spot rates along the yield curve used in the determination of the benefit obligation to the relevant projected cash flows. We made this change to provide a more precise measurement of service and interest costs by improving the correlation between the projected cash flows to the corresponding spot rates along the yield curve. This change will have no impact on our year-end pension and other postretirement liabilities and has been accounted for prospectively as a change in accounting estimate beginning in the first quarter of 2016. The discount rates used to measure the 2016 service and interest cost components of net periodic benefit cost are provided in the table below. Under the previous method the discount rate used for these components of cost would have been 4.2 percent for U.S. pensions, 3.2 percent for non-U.S. pensions and 4.1 percent for other postretirement benefits (OPEB). Compared to the method used in 2015, this change lowered pension and OPEB expense by \$45 million and \$135 million and increased profit per share by \$0.05 and \$0.15 for the three and nine months ended September 30, 2016, respectively.



Table of Contents

|                                                          | U.S. Pension Benefits |        | Non-U.S. Pension Benefits |        | Other Postretirement Benefits |      |
|----------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|--------|---------------------------|--------|-------------------------------|------|
| (Millions of dollars)                                    | September 30          |        | September 30              |        | September 30                  |      |
|                                                          | 2016                  | 2015   | 2016                      | 2015   | 2016                          | 2015 |
| For the three months ended:                              |                       |        |                           |        |                               |      |
| Components of net periodic benefit cost:                 |                       |        |                           |        |                               |      |
| Service cost                                             | \$30                  | \$45   | \$22                      | \$28   | \$20                          | \$26 |
| Interest cost                                            | 129                   | 151    | 30                        | 37     | 33                            | 46   |
| Expected return on plan assets                           | (190)                 | (224)  | (59)                      | (70)   | (11)                          | (15) |
| Amortization of prior service cost (credit) <sup>1</sup> | —                     | 1      | —                         | —      | (15)                          | (14) |
| Actuarial loss (gain)                                    | —                     | —      | —                         | (18)   | —                             | (9)  |
| Net periodic benefit cost (benefit)                      | (31)                  | (27)   | (7)                       | (23)   | 27                            | 34   |
| Curtailments and termination benefits <sup>2</sup>       | —                     | —      | 1                         | (2)    | —                             | (5)  |
| Total cost (benefit) included in operating profit        | \$(31)                | \$(27) | \$(6)                     | \$(25) | \$27                          | \$29 |

For the nine months ended:

|                                                          |        |         |        |        |      |       |
|----------------------------------------------------------|--------|---------|--------|--------|------|-------|
| Components of net periodic benefit cost:                 |        |         |        |        |      |       |
| Service cost                                             | \$89   | \$136   | \$68   | \$85   | \$61 | \$76  |
| Interest cost                                            | 388    | 454     | 90     | 112    | 98   | 138   |
| Expected return on plan assets                           | (568)  | (672)   | (176)  | (207)  | (33) | (43)  |
| Amortization of prior service cost (credit) <sup>1</sup> | —      | 1       | —      | —      | (45) | (41)  |
| Actuarial loss (gain)                                    | —      | (8)     | —      | (18)   | —    | (9)   |
| Net periodic benefit cost (benefit)                      | (91)   | (89)    | (18)   | (28)   | 81   | 121   |
| Curtailments and termination benefits <sup>2</sup>       | —      | (19)    | 1      | (2)    | (2)  | (5)   |
| Total cost (benefit) included in operating profit        | \$(91) | \$(108) | \$(17) | \$(30) | \$79 | \$116 |

Weighted-average assumptions used to determine net cost:

|                                             |       |       |       |       |       |       |
|---------------------------------------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| Discount rate used to measure service cost  | 4.5 % | 3.8 % | 2.9 % | 3.3 % | 4.4 % | 3.9 % |
| Discount rate used to measure interest cost | 3.4 % | 3.8 % | 2.8 % | 3.3 % | 3.3 % | 3.9 % |
| Expected rate of return on plan assets      | 6.9 % | 7.4 % | 6.1 % | 6.8 % | 7.5 % | 7.8 % |
| Rate of compensation increase               | 4.0 % | 4.0 % | 3.5 % | 4.0 % | 4.0 % | 4.0 % |

Prior service cost (credit) for both pension and other postretirement benefits are generally amortized using the straight-line method over the average remaining service period of active employees expected to receive benefits from the plan. For pension plans in which all or almost all of the plan's participants are inactive and other postretirement benefit plans in which all or almost all of the plan's participants are fully eligible for benefits under the plan, prior service cost (credit) are amortized using the straight-line method over the remaining life expectancy of those participants.

<sup>2</sup> Curtailments and termination benefits were recognized in Other operating (income) expenses in the Consolidated Statement of Results of Operations.

We made \$71 million and \$270 million of contributions to our pension and other postretirement plans during the three and nine months ended September 30, 2016, respectively. We currently anticipate full-year 2016 contributions of approximately \$350 million. We made \$65 million and \$263 million of contributions to our pension and other postretirement plans during the three and nine months ended September 30, 2015, respectively.



Table of Contents

## B. Defined contribution benefit costs

Total company costs related to our defined contribution plans were as follows:

|                       | Three<br>Months<br>Ended<br>September<br>30 |       | Nine<br>Months<br>Ended<br>September<br>30 |       |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------------------|-------|--------------------------------------------|-------|
| (Millions of dollars) | 2016                                        | 2015  | 2016                                       | 2015  |
| U.S. Plans            | \$ 83                                       | \$ 31 | \$235                                      | \$188 |
| Non-U.S. Plans        | 16                                          | 19    | 51                                         | 58    |
|                       | \$ 99                                       | \$ 50 | \$286                                      | \$246 |

## 10. Guarantees and product warranty

## Caterpillar dealer performance guarantees

We have provided an indemnity to a third-party insurance company for potential losses related to performance bonds issued on behalf of Caterpillar dealers. The bonds have varying terms and are issued to insure governmental agencies against nonperformance by certain dealers. We also provided guarantees to third-parties related to the performance of contractual obligations by certain Caterpillar dealers. These guarantees have varying terms and cover potential financial losses incurred by the third-parties resulting from the dealers' nonperformance.

## Customer loan guarantees

We provide loan guarantees to third-party lenders for financing associated with machinery purchased by customers. These guarantees have varying terms and are secured by the machinery. In addition, Cat Financial participates in standby letters of credit issued to third parties on behalf of their customers. These standby letters of credit have varying terms and beneficiaries and are secured by customer assets.

## Supplier consortium performance guarantee

We have provided a guarantee to one of our customers in Brazil related to the performance of contractual obligations by a supplier consortium to which one of our Caterpillar subsidiaries is a member. The guarantee covers potential damages (some of them capped) incurred by the customer resulting from the supplier consortium's non-performance. The guarantee will expire when the supplier consortium performs all its contractual obligations, which is expected to be completed in 2025.

## Third party logistics business lease guarantees

We have provided guarantees to third-party lessors for certain properties leased by a third party logistics business, formerly Caterpillar Logistics Services LCC, in which we sold our 35 percent equity interest in the first quarter of 2015 (see Note 6). The guarantees are for the possibility that the third party logistics business would default on real estate lease payments. The guarantees were granted at lease inception and generally will expire at the end of the lease terms.

No significant loss has been experienced or is anticipated under any of these guarantees. At both September 30, 2016 and December 31, 2015, the related liability was \$12 million. The maximum potential amount of future payments (undiscounted and without reduction for any amounts that may possibly be recovered under recourse or collateralized provisions) we could be required to make under the guarantees are as follows:

| (Millions of dollars)                           | September 30,<br>2016 | December 31,<br>2015 |
|-------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|
| Caterpillar dealer performance guarantees       | \$ 217                | \$ 216               |
| Customer loan guarantees                        | 51                    | 47                   |
| Supplier consortium performance guarantee       | 295                   | 286                  |
| Third party logistics business lease guarantees | 92                    | 107                  |
| Other guarantees                                | 38                    | 25                   |
| Total guarantees                                | \$ 693                | \$ 681               |

Table of Contents

Cat Financial provides guarantees to repurchase certain loans of Caterpillar dealers from a special-purpose corporation (SPC) that qualifies as a variable interest entity. The purpose of the SPC is to provide short-term working capital loans to Caterpillar dealers. This SPC issues commercial paper and uses the proceeds to fund its loan program. Cat Financial has a loan purchase agreement with the SPC that obligates Cat Financial to purchase certain loans that are not paid at maturity. Cat Financial receives a fee for providing this guarantee, which provides a source of liquidity for the SPC. Cat Financial is the primary beneficiary of the SPC as its guarantees result in Cat Financial having both the power to direct the activities that most significantly impact the SPC's economic performance and the obligation to absorb losses, and therefore Cat Financial has consolidated the financial statements of the SPC. As of September 30, 2016 and December 31, 2015, the SPC's assets of \$1,152 million and \$1,211 million, respectively, are primarily comprised of loans to dealers and the SPC's liabilities of \$1,151 million and \$1,210 million, respectively, are primarily comprised of commercial paper. The assets of the SPC are not available to pay Cat Financial's creditors. Cat Financial may be obligated to perform under the guarantee if the SPC experiences losses. No loss has been experienced or is anticipated under this loan purchase agreement.

Our product warranty liability is determined by applying historical claim rate experience to the current field population and dealer inventory. Generally, historical claim rates are based on actual warranty experience for each product by machine model/engine size by customer or dealer location (inside or outside North America). Specific rates are developed for each product shipment month and are updated monthly based on actual warranty claim experience.

|                                        |         |
|----------------------------------------|---------|
| (Millions of dollars)                  | 2016    |
| Warranty liability, January 1          | \$1,354 |
| Reduction in liability (payments)      | (676 )  |
| Increase in liability (new warranties) | 628     |
| Warranty liability, September 30       | \$1,306 |

|                                        |         |
|----------------------------------------|---------|
| (Millions of dollars)                  | 2015    |
| Warranty liability, January 1          | \$1,426 |
| Reduction in liability (payments)      | (874 )  |
| Increase in liability (new warranties) | 802     |
| Warranty liability, December 31        | \$1,354 |

# 11. Profit per share

## Computations

of Months      Nine Months  
ended      Ended  
September      September 30  
at:  
(2016) 2015      2016      2015  
in  
millions  
except  
per  
share

data)  
Profit  
for  
the  
\$283 \$559 \$1,104 \$2,606  
period  
(A)  
1

Determination  
of  
shares  
(in  
millions):  
Weighted-average  
number  
of  
common  
584.7 588.4 583.8 597.9  
shares  
outstanding

(B)  
Shares  
issuable  
on  
exercise  
of  
stock  
awards,  
net  
of  
shares  
assumed  
4.0 6.4 4.9 7.4  
to  
be  
purchased  
out  
of  
proceeds  
at  
average  
market  
price  
Average  
common  
shares  
outstanding  
for  
589.6 594.8 588.7 605.3  
fully  
diluted  
computation

(C) <sup>2</sup>  
Profit  
per

share

of

common

stock:

Assuming

no  
dilution

|        |        |        |        |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| \$0.48 | \$0.95 | \$1.89 | \$4.36 |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|

(A/B)

Assuming

full  
dilution

|        |        |        |        |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| \$0.48 | \$0.94 | \$1.88 | \$4.30 |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|

(A/C)<sup>2</sup>

Shares

outstanding

as

of  
September

|       |       |
|-------|-------|
| 585.1 | 582.2 |
|-------|-------|

30

(in

millions)

<sup>1</sup> Profit attributable to common stockholders.

<sup>2</sup> Diluted by assumed exercise of stock-based compensation awards using the treasury stock method.

Table of Contents

SARs and stock options to purchase 21,874,118 and 26,088,324 common shares were outstanding for the three and nine months ended September 30, 2016, respectively, which were not included in the computation of diluted earnings per share because the effect would have been anti-dilutive. For the three and nine months ended September 30, 2015, there were outstanding SARs and stock options to purchase 22,281,448 common shares which were anti-dilutive.

In January 2014, the Board authorized the repurchase of up to \$10.0 billion of Caterpillar common stock, which will expire on December 31, 2018. In July 2015, we entered into a definitive agreement with Citibank, N.A. to purchase shares of our common stock under an accelerated stock repurchase transaction (July 2015 ASR Agreement), which was completed in September 2015. Pursuant to the terms of the July 2015 ASR Agreement, a total of approximately 19.6 million shares of our common stock were repurchased at an aggregate cost to Caterpillar of \$1.5 billion. For the nine months ended September 30, 2015, a total of 25.8 million shares of our common stock were repurchased at an aggregate cost to Caterpillar of \$2.0 billion. We did not purchase any Caterpillar common stock during the nine months ended September 30, 2016. As of September 30, 2016, approximately \$4.5 billion of the \$10.0 billion authorization was spent.

## 12. Accumulated other comprehensive income (loss)

Comprehensive income and its components are presented in the Consolidated Statement of Comprehensive Income. Changes in Accumulated other comprehensive income (loss), net of tax, included in the Consolidated Statement of Changes in Stockholders' Equity, consisted of the following:

| (Millions of dollars)                                                   | Foreign<br>currency<br>translation | Pension and<br>other<br>postretirement<br>benefits | Derivative<br>financial<br>instruments | Available-for-sale<br>securities | Total      |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|----------------------------------|------------|
| Three Months Ended September 30, 2016                                   |                                    |                                                    |                                        |                                  |            |
| Balance at June 30, 2016                                                | \$ (1,648 )                        | \$ 29                                              | \$ (49 )                               | \$ 35                            | \$ (1,633) |
| Other comprehensive income (loss) before reclassifications              | 124                                | 2                                                  | (28 )                                  | 5                                | 103        |
| Amounts reclassified from accumulated other comprehensive (income) loss | 13                                 | (10 )                                              | 6                                      | (6 )                             | 3          |
| Other comprehensive income (loss)                                       | 137                                | (8 )                                               | (22 )                                  | (1 )                             | 106        |
| Balance at September 30, 2016                                           | \$ (1,511 )                        | \$ 21                                              | \$ (71 )                               | \$ 34                            | \$ (1,527) |
| Three Months Ended September 30, 2015                                   |                                    |                                                    |                                        |                                  |            |
| Balance at June 30, 2015                                                | \$ (1,554 )                        | \$ (49 )                                           | \$ (73 )                               | \$ 82                            | \$ (1,594) |
| Other comprehensive income (loss) before reclassifications              | (235 )                             | 1                                                  | (12 )                                  | (15 )                            | (261 )     |
| Amounts reclassified from accumulated other comprehensive (income) loss | —                                  | (8 )                                               | 20                                     | (18 )                            | (6 )       |
| Other comprehensive income (loss)                                       | (235 )                             | (7 )                                               | 8                                      | (33 )                            | (267 )     |
| Balance at September 30, 2015                                           | \$ (1,789 )                        | \$ (56 )                                           | \$ (65 )                               | \$ 49                            | \$ (1,861) |



Table of Contents

| (Millions of dollars)                                                      | Foreign<br>currency<br>translation | Pension and<br>other<br>postretirement<br>benefits | Derivative<br>financial<br>instruments | Available-for-sale<br>securities | Total     |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|----------------------------------|-----------|
| Nine Months Ended September 30, 2016                                       |                                    |                                                    |                                        |                                  |           |
| Balance at December 31, 2015                                               | \$ (1,953 )                        | \$ (69 )                                           | \$ (50 )                               | \$ 37                            | \$(2,035) |
| Other comprehensive income (loss) before<br>reclassifications              | 429                                | 119                                                | (37 )                                  | 21                               | 532       |
| Amounts reclassified from accumulated other<br>comprehensive (income) loss | 13                                 | (29 )                                              | 16                                     | (24 )                            | (24 )     |
| Other comprehensive income (loss)                                          | 442                                | 90                                                 | (21 )                                  | (3 )                             | 508       |
| Balance at September 30, 2016                                              | \$ (1,511 )                        | \$ 21                                              | \$ (71 )                               | \$ 34                            | \$(1,527) |
| Nine Months Ended September 30, 2015                                       |                                    |                                                    |                                        |                                  |           |
| Balance at December 31, 2014                                               | \$ (992 )                          | \$ (31 )                                           | \$ (119 )                              | \$ 83                            | \$(1,059) |
| Other comprehensive income (loss) before<br>reclassifications              | (797 )                             | 1                                                  | (15 )                                  | (13 )                            | (824 )    |
| Amounts reclassified from accumulated other<br>comprehensive (income) loss | —                                  | (26 )                                              | 69                                     | (21 )                            | 22        |
| Other comprehensive income (loss)                                          | (797 )                             | (25 )                                              | 54                                     | (34 )                            | (802 )    |
| Balance at September 30, 2015                                              | \$ (1,789 )                        | \$ (56 )                                           | \$ (65 )                               | \$ 49                            | \$(1,861) |

Table of Contents

The effect of the reclassifications out of Accumulated other comprehensive income (loss) on the Consolidated Statement of Results of Operations is as follows:

|                                                                            |                                               | Three<br>Months<br>Ended<br>September<br>30 |        |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|--------|
| (Millions of dollars)                                                      | Classification of<br>income (expense)         | 2016                                        | 2015   |
| Foreign currency translation                                               |                                               |                                             |        |
| Gain (loss) on foreign currency translation                                | Other income (expense)                        | \$(13)                                      | \$—    |
| Tax (provision) benefit                                                    |                                               | —                                           | —      |
| Reclassifications net of tax                                               |                                               | \$(13)                                      | \$—    |
| Pension and other postretirement benefits:                                 |                                               |                                             |        |
| Amortization of prior service credit (cost)                                | Note 9 <sup>1</sup>                           | \$15                                        | \$13   |
| Tax (provision) benefit                                                    |                                               | (5 )                                        | (5 )   |
| Reclassifications net of tax                                               |                                               | \$10                                        | \$8    |
| Derivative financial instruments:                                          |                                               |                                             |        |
| Foreign exchange contracts                                                 | Other income (expense)                        | \$(6 )                                      | \$(29) |
| Interest rate contracts                                                    | Interest expense excluding Financial Products | (2 )                                        | (1 )   |
| Interest rate contracts                                                    | Interest expense of Financial Products        | —                                           | (1 )   |
| Reclassifications before tax                                               |                                               | (8 )                                        | (31 )  |
| Tax (provision) benefit                                                    |                                               | 2                                           | 11     |
| Reclassifications net of tax                                               |                                               | \$(6 )                                      | \$(20) |
| Available-for-sale securities:                                             |                                               |                                             |        |
| Realized gain (loss)                                                       | Other income (expense)                        | \$9                                         | \$27   |
| Tax (provision) benefit                                                    |                                               | (3 )                                        | (9 )   |
| Reclassifications net of tax                                               |                                               | \$6                                         | \$18   |
| Total reclassifications from Accumulated other comprehensive income (loss) |                                               | \$(3 )                                      | \$6    |

<sup>1</sup> Amounts are included in the calculation of net periodic benefit cost. See Note 9 for additional information.

Table of Contents

|                                                                            |                                               | Nine Months<br>Ended<br>September 30 |         |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|---------|
| (Millions of dollars)                                                      | Classification of<br>income (expense)         | 2016                                 | 2015    |
| Foreign currency translation                                               |                                               |                                      |         |
| Gain (loss) on foreign currency translation                                | Other income (expense)                        | \$(13)                               | \$—     |
| Tax (provision) benefit                                                    |                                               | —                                    | —       |
| Reclassifications net of tax                                               |                                               | \$(13)                               | \$—     |
| Pension and other postretirement benefits:                                 |                                               |                                      |         |
| Amortization of prior service credit (cost)                                | Note 9 <sup>1</sup>                           | \$45                                 | \$40    |
| Tax (provision) benefit                                                    |                                               | (16 )                                | (14 )   |
| Reclassifications net of tax                                               |                                               | \$29                                 | \$26    |
| Derivative financial instruments:                                          |                                               |                                      |         |
| Foreign exchange contracts                                                 | Other income (expense)                        | \$(16)                               | \$(101) |
| Interest rate contracts                                                    | Interest expense excluding Financial Products | (5 )                                 | (4 )    |
| Interest rate contracts                                                    | Interest expense of Financial Products        | (3 )                                 | (4 )    |
| Reclassifications before tax                                               |                                               | (24 )                                | (109 )  |
| Tax (provision) benefit                                                    |                                               | 8                                    | 40      |
| Reclassifications net of tax                                               |                                               | \$(16)                               | \$(69 ) |
| Available-for-sale securities:                                             |                                               |                                      |         |
| Realized gain (loss)                                                       | Other income (expense)                        | \$36                                 | \$31    |
| Tax (provision) benefit                                                    |                                               | (12 )                                | (10 )   |
| Reclassifications net of tax                                               |                                               | \$24                                 | \$21    |
| Total reclassifications from Accumulated other comprehensive income (loss) |                                               | \$24                                 | \$(22 ) |

<sup>1</sup> Amounts are included in the calculation of net periodic benefit cost. See Note 9 for additional information.

### 13. Environmental and legal matters

The Company is regulated by federal, state and international environmental laws governing our use, transport and disposal of substances and control of emissions. In addition to governing our manufacturing and other operations, these laws often impact the development of our products, including, but not limited to, required compliance with air emissions standards applicable to internal combustion engines. We have made, and will continue to make, significant research and development and capital expenditures to comply with these emissions standards.

We are engaged in remedial activities at a number of locations, often with other companies, pursuant to federal and state laws. When it is probable we will pay remedial costs at a site, and those costs can be reasonably estimated, the investigation, remediation, and operating and maintenance costs are accrued against our earnings. Costs are accrued based on consideration of currently available data and information with respect to each individual site, including available technologies, current applicable laws and regulations, and prior remediation experience. Where no amount within a range of estimates is more likely, we accrue the minimum. Where multiple potentially responsible parties are

involved, we consider our proportionate share of the probable costs. In formulating the estimate of probable costs, we do not consider amounts expected to be recovered from insurance companies or others. We reassess these accrued amounts on a quarterly basis. The amount recorded for environmental remediation is not material and is included in Accrued expenses. We believe

Table of Contents

there is no more than a remote chance that a material amount for remedial activities at any individual site, or at all the sites in the aggregate, will be required.

On January 8, 2015, the Company received a grand jury subpoena from the U.S. District Court for the Central District of Illinois. The subpoena requests documents and information from the Company relating to, among other things, financial information concerning U.S. and non-U.S. Caterpillar subsidiaries (including undistributed profits of non-U.S. subsidiaries and the movement of cash among U.S. and non-U.S. subsidiaries). The Company has received additional subpoenas relating to this investigation requesting additional documents and information relating to, among other things, the purchase and resale of replacement parts by Caterpillar Inc. and non-U.S. Caterpillar subsidiaries, dividend distributions of certain non-U.S. Caterpillar subsidiaries, and Caterpillar SARL and related structures. The Company is cooperating with this investigation. The Company is unable to predict the outcome or reasonably estimate any potential loss; however, we currently believe that this matter will not have a material adverse effect on the Company's consolidated results of operations, financial position or liquidity.

On September 10, 2014, the SEC issued to Caterpillar a subpoena seeking information concerning the Company's accounting for the goodwill relating to its acquisition of Bucyrus International Inc. in 2011 and related matters. The Company has received additional subpoenas relating to this investigation, and the Company is cooperating with the SEC regarding its ongoing investigation. The Company is unable to predict the outcome or reasonably estimate any potential loss; however, we currently believe that this matter will not have a material adverse effect on the Company's consolidated results of operations, financial position or liquidity.

On March 20, 2014, Brazil's Administrative Council for Economic Defense (CADE) published a Technical Opinion which named 18 companies and over 100 individuals as defendants, including two subsidiaries of Caterpillar Inc., MGE - Equipamentos e Serviços Ferroviários Ltda. (MGE) and Caterpillar Brasil Ltda. The publication of the Technical Opinion opened CADE's official administrative investigation into allegations that the defendants participated in anticompetitive bid activity for the construction and maintenance of metro and train networks in Brazil. While companies cannot be held criminally liable for anticompetitive conduct in Brazil, criminal charges have been brought against two current employees of MGE and one former employee of MGE involving the same conduct alleged by CADE. The Company has responded to all requests for information from the authorities. The Company is unable to predict the outcome or reasonably estimate the potential loss; however, we currently believe that this matter will not have a material adverse effect on the Company's consolidated results of operations, financial position or liquidity.

On October 24, 2013, Progress Rail received a grand jury subpoena from the U.S. District Court for the Central District of California. The subpoena requests documents and information from Progress Rail, United Industries Corporation, a wholly-owned subsidiary of Progress Rail, and Caterpillar Inc. relating to allegations that Progress Rail conducted improper or unnecessary railcar inspections and repairs and improperly disposed of parts, equipment, tools and other items. In connection with this subpoena, Progress Rail was informed by the U.S. Attorney for the Central District of California that it is a target of a criminal investigation into potential violations of environmental laws and alleged improper business practices. The Company is cooperating with the authorities and is currently in discussions regarding a potential resolution of the matter. Although the Company believes a loss is probable, we currently believe that this matter will not have a material adverse effect on the Company's consolidated results of operations, financial position or liquidity.

In addition, we are involved in other unresolved legal actions that arise in the normal course of business. The most prevalent of these unresolved actions involve disputes related to product design, manufacture and performance liability (including claimed asbestos and welding fumes exposure), contracts, employment issues, environmental matters or intellectual property rights. The aggregate range of reasonably possible losses in excess of accrued liabilities, if any, associated with these unresolved legal actions is not material. In some cases, we cannot reasonably

estimate a range of loss because there is insufficient information regarding the matter. However, we believe there is no more than a remote chance that any liability arising from these matters would be material. Although it is not possible to predict with certainty the outcome of these unresolved legal actions, we believe that these actions will not individually or in the aggregate have a material adverse effect on our consolidated results of operations, financial position or liquidity.

14. Income taxes

The provision for income taxes for the first nine months of 2016 reflects an estimated annual tax rate of 25 percent compared to 28 percent for the first nine months of 2015 and 25.5 percent for the full-year 2015, excluding a \$42 million discrete tax charge recorded in the third quarter of 2015. The full-year rate for 2015 of 25.5 percent was lower than the third-quarter 2015 rate of 28 percent, primarily due to the permanent renewal of the U.S. research and development tax credit along with changes in the geographic mix of profits from a tax perspective in the fourth quarter.

## Table of Contents

Due to recent losses in the U.S. and the weight given to this negative objective evidence under the accounting rules, it is reasonably possible that up to approximately \$230 million of U.S. state deferred tax assets as of September 30, 2016 will require additional valuation allowances in the next twelve months to reduce deferred tax assets to the amount more likely than not to be realized. Any non-cash adjustment to the valuation allowance for U.S. state deferred tax assets will be recorded in the provision for income taxes, net of a federal deferred tax adjustment at 35 percent.

On January 30, 2015, we received a Revenue Agent's Report (RAR) from the Internal Revenue Service (IRS) indicating the end of the field examination of our U.S. tax returns for 2007 to 2009 including the impact of a loss carryback to 2005. The RAR proposed tax increases and penalties for these years of approximately \$1 billion primarily related to two significant areas that we are vigorously contesting through the IRS Appeals process. In the first area, the IRS has proposed to tax in the United States profits earned from certain parts transactions by one of our non-U.S. subsidiaries, Caterpillar SARL (CSARL), based on the IRS examination team's application of the "substance-over-form" or "assignment-of-income" judicial doctrines. We believe that the relevant transactions complied with applicable tax laws and did not violate judicial doctrines. We have filed U.S. tax returns on this same basis for years after 2009. In the second area, the IRS disallowed approximately \$125 million of foreign tax credits that arose as a result of certain financings unrelated to CSARL. Based on the information currently available, we do not anticipate a significant increase or decrease to our unrecognized tax benefits for these matters within the next 12 months. We currently believe the ultimate disposition of these matters will not have a material adverse effect on our consolidated financial position, liquidity or results of operations.

### 15. Segment information

#### A. Basis for segment information

Our Executive Office is comprised of five Group Presidents, a Senior Vice President, an Executive Vice President and a CEO. Group Presidents are accountable for a related set of end-to-end businesses that they manage. The Senior Vice President leads the Caterpillar Enterprise System Group and the Executive Vice President leads the Law and Public Policy Division. The CEO allocates resources and manages performance at the Group President level. As such, the CEO serves as our Chief Operating Decision Maker and operating segments are primarily based on the Group President reporting structure.

Three of our operating segments, Construction Industries, Resource Industries and Energy & Transportation are led by Group Presidents. One operating segment, Financial Products, is led by a Group President who also has responsibility for Corporate Services. Corporate Services is a cost center primarily responsible for the performance of certain support functions globally and to provide centralized services; it does not meet the definition of an operating segment. One Group President leads two smaller operating segments that are included in the All Other operating segments. The Caterpillar Enterprise System Group and Law and Public Policy Division are cost centers and do not meet the definition of an operating segment.

Effective January 1, 2016, we made the following changes to segment reporting. These changes were made to reflect changes in organizational accountabilities and refinements to our internal reporting.

- Responsibility for remanufacturing of Cat engines and components and remanufacturing services for other companies moved from the All Other operating segments to Energy & Transportation.
- Responsibility for business strategy, product management, development, manufacturing, marketing and product support for forestry and paving products moved from the All Other operating segments to Construction Industries.
- Responsibility for business strategy, product management, development, manufacturing, marketing and product support for industrial and waste products moved from the All Other operating segments to Resource Industries.

Responsibility for sales and product support of on-highway vocational trucks for North America moved from the All Other operating segments to Energy & Transportation.

Internal charges for component manufacturing and logistics services provided by All Other operating segments to Construction Industries, Resource Industries and Energy & Transportation in excess of cost have been adjusted to approximate cost, resulting in a reduction in profit in the All Other operating segments and corresponding increases in profit in the other three segments.

Costs that previously had been included in Corporate costs, primarily for company-wide strategies such as information technology and manufacturing process transformation, have been included in the ME&T operating segments that benefit from the costs.

Table of Contents

Segment information for 2015 has been retrospectively adjusted to conform to the 2016 presentation.

B. Description of segments

We have six operating segments, of which four are reportable segments. Following is a brief description of our reportable segments and the business activities included in the All Other operating segments:

**Construction Industries:** A segment primarily responsible for supporting customers using machinery in infrastructure, forestry and building construction applications. Responsibilities include business strategy, product design, product management and development, manufacturing, marketing and sales and product support. The product portfolio includes backhoe loaders, small wheel loaders, small track-type tractors, skid steer loaders, multi-terrain loaders, mini excavators, compact wheel loaders, telehandlers, select work tools, small, medium and large track excavators, wheel excavators, medium wheel loaders, compact track loaders, medium track-type tractors, track-type loaders, motor graders, pipelayers, forestry products, paving products and related parts. Inter-segment sales are a source of revenue for this segment.

**Resource Industries:** A segment primarily responsible for supporting customers using machinery in mining, quarry, waste, and material handling applications. Responsibilities include business strategy, product design, product management and development, manufacturing, marketing and sales and product support. The product portfolio includes large track-type tractors, large mining trucks, hard rock vehicles, longwall miners, electric rope shovels, draglines, hydraulic shovels, track and rotary drills, highwall miners, large wheel loaders, off-highway trucks, articulated trucks, wheel tractor scrapers, wheel dozers, landfill compactors, soil compactors, material handlers, continuous miners, scoops and haulers, hardrock continuous mining systems, select work tools, machinery components, electronics and control systems and related parts. In addition to equipment, Resource Industries also develops and sells technology to provide customers fleet management systems, equipment management analytics and autonomous machine capabilities. Resource Industries also manages areas that provide services to other parts of the company, including integrated manufacturing and research and development. Inter-segment sales are a source of revenue for this segment.

**Energy & Transportation:** A segment primarily responsible for supporting customers using reciprocating engines, turbines, diesel-electric locomotives and related parts across industries serving power generation, industrial, oil and gas and transportation applications, including marine and rail-related businesses. Responsibilities include business strategy, product design, product management and development, manufacturing, marketing, sales and product support of turbines and turbine-related services, reciprocating engine powered generator sets, integrated systems used in the electric power generation industry, reciprocating engines and integrated systems and solutions for the marine and oil and gas industries; reciprocating engines supplied to the industrial industry as well as Cat machinery; the remanufacturing of Cat engines and components and remanufacturing services for other companies; the business strategy, product design, product management and development, manufacturing, remanufacturing, leasing and service of diesel-electric locomotives and components and other rail-related products and services and product support of on-highway vocational trucks for North America. Inter-segment sales are a source of revenue for this segment.

**Financial Products Segment:** Provides financing to customers and dealers for the purchase and lease of Cat and other equipment, as well as some financing for Caterpillar sales to dealers. Financing plans include operating and finance leases, installment sale contracts, working capital loans and wholesale financing plans. The segment also provides various forms of insurance to customers and dealers to help support the purchase and lease of our equipment.

All Other operating segments: Primarily includes activities such as: the business strategy, product management, development, and manufacturing of filters and fluids, undercarriage, tires and rims, ground engaging tools, fluid transfer products, precision seals and rubber, and sealing and connecting components primarily for Cat products; parts distribution; distribution services responsible for dealer development and administration including a wholly-owned dealer in Japan, dealer portfolio management and ensuring the most efficient and effective distribution of machines, engines and parts; digital investments for new customer and dealer solutions that integrate data analytics with state-of-the art digital technologies while transforming the buying experience. Results for the All Other operating segments are included as a reconciling item between reportable segments and consolidated external reporting.

#### C. Segment measurement and reconciliations

There are several methodology differences between our segment reporting and our external reporting. The following is a list of the more significant methodology differences:

40

---

Table of Contents

Machinery, Energy & Transportation segment net assets generally include inventories, receivables, property, plant and equipment, goodwill, intangibles, accounts payable, and customer advances. Liabilities other than accounts payable and customer advances are generally managed at the corporate level and are not included in segment operations. Financial Products Segment assets generally include all categories of assets.

Segment inventories and cost of sales are valued using a current cost methodology.

Goodwill allocated to segments is amortized using a fixed amount based on a 20 year useful life. This methodology difference only impacts segment assets; no goodwill amortization expense is included in segment profit. In addition, only a portion of goodwill for certain acquisitions made in 2011 or later has been allocated to segments.

The present value of future lease payments for certain Machinery, Energy & Transportation operating leases is included in segment assets. The estimated financing component of the lease payments is excluded.

Currency exposures for Machinery, Energy & Transportation are generally managed at the corporate level and the effects of changes in exchange rates on results of operations within the year are not included in segment profit. The net difference created in the translation of revenues and costs between exchange rates used for U.S. GAAP reporting and exchange rates used for segment reporting is recorded as a methodology difference.

Stock-based compensation expense is not included in segment profit.

Postretirement benefit expenses are split; segments are generally responsible for service and prior service costs, with the remaining elements of net periodic benefit cost included as a methodology difference.

Machinery, Energy & Transportation segment profit is determined on a pretax basis and excludes interest expense and other income/expense items. Financial Products Segment profit is determined on a pretax basis and includes other income/expense items.

Reconciling items are created based on accounting differences between segment reporting and our consolidated external reporting. Please refer to pages 44 to 50 for financial information regarding significant reconciling items. Most of our reconciling items are self-explanatory given the above explanations. For the reconciliation of profit, we have grouped the reconciling items as follows:

Corporate costs: These costs are related to corporate requirements primarily for compliance and legal functions for the benefit of the entire organization.

Restructuring costs: Primarily costs for employee separation costs, long-lived asset impairments and contract terminations. These costs are included in Other Operating (Income) Expenses. Restructuring costs also include other exit-related costs primarily for accelerated depreciation, equipment relocation, inventory write-downs and sales discounts and payments to dealers and customers related to discontinued products. A table, Reconciliation of Restructuring costs on page 47, has been included to illustrate how segment profit would have been impacted by the restructuring costs. See Note 18 for more information.

Methodology differences: See previous discussion of significant accounting differences between segment reporting and consolidated external reporting.

Timing: Timing differences in the recognition of costs between segment reporting and consolidated external reporting. For example, certain costs are reported on the cash basis for segment reporting and the accrual basis for

consolidated external reporting.

41

---

Table of Contents

## Reportable Segments

Three Months Ended September 30

(Millions of dollars)

|                                    | 2016                        |                                  |                          |                               |                |                                |                      |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------------|----------------|--------------------------------|----------------------|
|                                    | External sales and revenues | Inter-segment sales and revenues | Total sales and revenues | Depreciation and amortization | Segment profit | Segment assets at September 30 | Capital expenditures |
| Construction Industries            | \$3,554                     | \$ 27                            | \$3,581                  | \$ 117                        | \$ 326         | \$ 5,521                       | \$ 46                |
| Resource Industries                | 1,377                       | 69                               | 1,446                    | 150                           | (77 )          | 8,017                          | 68                   |
| Energy & Transportation            | 3,534                       | 629                              | 4,163                    | 170                           | 572            | 8,118                          | 97                   |
| Machinery, Energy & Transportation | \$8,465                     | \$ 725                           | \$9,190                  | \$ 437                        | \$ 821         | \$ 21,656                      | \$ 211               |
| Financial Products Segment         | 749                         | —                                | 749                      | 215                           | 183            | 36,330                         | 357                  |
| Total                              | \$9,214                     | \$ 725                           | \$9,939                  | \$ 652                        | \$ 1,004       | \$ 57,986                      | \$ 568               |
|                                    | 2015                        |                                  |                          |                               |                |                                |                      |
|                                    | External sales and revenues | Inter-segment sales and revenues | Total sales and revenues | Depreciation and amortization | Segment profit | Segment assets at December 31  | Capital expenditures |
| Construction Industries            | \$4,075                     | \$ 17                            | \$4,092                  | \$ 139                        | \$ 354         | \$ 6,176                       | \$ 62                |
| Resource Industries                | 1,842                       | 88                               | 1,930                    | 144                           | (42 )          | 8,931                          | 73                   |
| Energy & Transportation            | 4,352                       | 702                              | 5,054                    | 172                           | 683            | 8,769                          | 179                  |
| Machinery, Energy & Transportation | \$10,269                    | \$ 807                           | \$11,076                 | \$ 455                        | \$ 995         | \$ 23,876                      | \$ 314               |
| Financial Products Segment         | 752                         | —                                | 752                      | 210                           | 207            | 35,729                         | 359                  |
| Total                              | \$11,021                    | \$ 807                           | \$11,828                 | \$ 665                        | \$ 1,202       | \$ 59,605                      | \$ 673               |

Table of Contents

## Reportable Segments

Nine Months Ended September 30

(Millions of dollars)

|                                    | 2016                        |                                  |                          |                               |                |                                |                      |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------------|----------------|--------------------------------|----------------------|
|                                    | External sales and revenues | Inter-segment sales and revenues | Total sales and revenues | Depreciation and amortization | Segment profit | Segment assets at September 30 | Capital expenditures |
| Construction Industries            | \$12,023                    | \$ 47                            | \$12,070                 | \$ 346                        | \$ 1,316       | \$ 5,521                       | \$ 114               |
| Resource Industries                | 4,283                       | 197                              | 4,480                    | 458                           | (336 )         | 8,017                          | 162                  |
| Energy & Transportation            | 10,562                      | 1,919                            | 12,481                   | 505                           | 1,584          | 8,118                          | 340                  |
| Machinery, Energy & Transportation | \$26,868                    | \$ 2,163                         | \$29,031                 | \$ 1,309                      | \$ 2,564       | \$ 21,656                      | \$ 616               |
| Financial Products Segment         | 2,251                       | —                                | 2,251                    | 633                           | 553            | 36,330                         | 1,266                |
| Total                              | \$29,119                    | \$ 2,163                         | \$31,282                 | \$ 1,942                      | \$ 3,117       | \$ 57,986                      | \$ 1,882             |
|                                    | 2015                        |                                  |                          |                               |                |                                |                      |
|                                    | External sales and revenues | Inter-segment sales and revenues | Total sales and revenues | Depreciation and amortization | Segment profit | Segment assets at December 31  | Capital expenditures |
| Construction Industries            | \$13,892                    | \$ 66                            | \$13,958                 | \$ 419                        | \$ 1,687       | \$ 6,176                       | \$ 156               |
| Resource Industries                | 5,861                       | 250                              | 6,111                    | 441                           | 81             | 8,931                          | 152                  |
| Energy & Transportation            | 13,975                      | 2,262                            | 16,237                   | 510                           | 2,649          | 8,769                          | 565                  |
| Machinery, Energy & Transportation | \$33,728                    | \$ 2,578                         | \$36,306                 | \$ 1,370                      | \$ 4,417       | \$ 23,876                      | \$ 873               |
| Financial Products Segment         | 2,332                       | —                                | 2,332                    | 638                           | 618            | 35,729                         | 995                  |
| Total                              | \$36,060                    | \$ 2,578                         | \$38,638                 | \$ 2,008                      | \$ 5,035       | \$ 59,605                      | \$ 1,868             |

Table of Contents

## Reconciliation of Sales and revenues:

| (Millions of dollars)                                      | Machinery,<br>Energy &<br>Transportation | Financial<br>Products | Consolidating<br>Adjustments | Consolidated<br>Total |
|------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------|
| Three Months Ended September 30, 2016                      |                                          |                       |                              |                       |
| Total external sales and revenues from reportable segments | \$ 8,465                                 | \$ 749                | \$ —                         | \$ 9,214              |
| All Other operating segments                               | 28                                       | —                     | —                            | 28                    |
| Other                                                      | (30                                      | ) 19                  | (71                          | ) <sup>1</sup> (82    |
| Total sales and revenues                                   | \$ 8,463                                 | \$ 768                | \$ (71                       | ) \$ 9,160            |

## Three Months Ended September 30, 2015

|                                                            |           |        |        |                    |   |
|------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|--------|--------|--------------------|---|
| Total external sales and revenues from reportable segments | \$ 10,269 | \$ 752 | \$ —   | \$ 11,021          |   |
| All Other operating segments                               | 39        | —      | —      | 39                 |   |
| Other                                                      | (23       | ) 20   | (95    | ) <sup>1</sup> (98 | ) |
| Total sales and revenues                                   | \$ 10,285 | \$ 772 | \$ (95 | ) \$ 10,962        |   |

<sup>1</sup> Elimination of Financial Products revenues from Machinery, Energy & Transportation.

## Reconciliation of Sales and revenues:

| (Millions of dollars)                                      | Machinery,<br>Energy &<br>Transportation | Financial<br>Products | Consolidating<br>Adjustments | Consolidated<br>Total |   |
|------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------|---|
| Nine Months Ended September 30, 2016                       |                                          |                       |                              |                       |   |
| Total external sales and revenues from reportable segments | \$ 26,868                                | \$ 2,251              | \$ —                         | \$ 29,119             |   |
| All Other operating segments                               | 107                                      | —                     | —                            | 107                   |   |
| Other                                                      | (87                                      | ) 54                  | (230                         | ) <sup>1</sup> (263   | ) |
| Total sales and revenues                                   | \$ 26,888                                | \$ 2,305              | \$ (230                      | ) \$ 28,963           |   |

## Nine Months Ended September 30, 2015

|                                                            |           |          |         |                     |
|------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|----------|---------|---------------------|
| Total external sales and revenues from reportable segments | \$ 33,728 | \$ 2,332 | \$ —    | \$ 36,060           |
| All Other operating segments                               | 166       | —        | —       | 166                 |
| Other                                                      | (65       | ) 58     | (238    | ) <sup>1</sup> (245 |
| Total sales and revenues                                   | \$ 33,829 | \$ 2,390 | \$ (238 | ) \$ 35,981         |

<sup>1</sup> Elimination of Financial Products revenues from Machinery, Energy & Transportation.

Table of Contents

## Reconciliation of Consolidated profit before taxes:

| (Millions of dollars)                        | Machinery,<br>Energy &<br>Transportation | Financial<br>Products | Consolidated<br>Total |
|----------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| Three Months Ended September 30, 2016        |                                          |                       |                       |
| Total profit from reportable segments        | \$ 821                                   | \$ 183                | \$ 1,004              |
| All Other operating segments                 | (22 )                                    | —                     | (22 )                 |
| Cost centers                                 | 29                                       | —                     | 29                    |
| Corporate costs                              | (121 )                                   | —                     | (121 )                |
| Timing                                       | 12                                       | —                     | 12                    |
| Restructuring costs                          | (323 )                                   | (1 )                  | (324 )                |
| Methodology differences:                     |                                          |                       |                       |
| Inventory/cost of sales                      | 19                                       | —                     | 19                    |
| Postretirement benefit expense               | 37                                       | —                     | 37                    |
| Stock-based compensation expense             | (40 )                                    | (1 )                  | (41 )                 |
| Financing costs                              | (129 )                                   | —                     | (129 )                |
| Currency                                     | (10 )                                    | —                     | (10 )                 |
| Other income/expense methodology differences | (60 )                                    | —                     | (60 )                 |
| Other methodology differences                | (11 )                                    | —                     | (11 )                 |
| Total consolidated profit before taxes       | \$ 202                                   | \$ 181                | \$ 383                |
| Three Months Ended September 30, 2015        |                                          |                       |                       |
| Total profit from reportable segments        | \$ 995                                   | \$ 207                | \$ 1,202              |
| All Other operating segments                 | (11 )                                    | —                     | (11 )                 |
| Cost centers                                 | 23                                       | —                     | 23                    |
| Corporate costs                              | (136 )                                   | —                     | (136 )                |
| Timing                                       | 37                                       | —                     | 37                    |
| Restructuring costs                          | (98 )                                    | —                     | (98 )                 |
| Methodology differences:                     |                                          |                       | —                     |
| Inventory/cost of sales                      | (22 )                                    | —                     | (22 )                 |
| Postretirement benefit expense               | 131                                      | —                     | 131                   |
| Stock-based compensation expense             | (46 )                                    | (2 )                  | (48 )                 |
| Financing costs                              | (128 )                                   | —                     | (128 )                |
| Currency                                     | (104 )                                   | —                     | (104 )                |
| Other income/expense methodology differences | (51 )                                    | —                     | (51 )                 |
| Other methodology differences                | (13 )                                    | 1                     | (12 )                 |
| Total consolidated profit before taxes       | \$ 577                                   | \$ 206                | \$ 783                |

Table of Contents

## Reconciliation of Consolidated profit before taxes:

| (Millions of dollars)                        | Machinery,<br>Energy &<br>Transportation | Financial<br>Products | Consolidated<br>Total |   |
|----------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|---|
| Nine Months Ended September 30, 2016         |                                          |                       |                       |   |
| Total profit from reportable segments        | \$ 2,564                                 | \$ 553                | \$ 3,117              |   |
| All Other operating segments                 | (43                                      | ) —                   | (43                   | ) |
| Cost centers                                 | 68                                       | —                     | 68                    |   |
| Corporate costs                              | (429                                     | ) —                   | (429                  | ) |
| Timing                                       | 53                                       | —                     | 53                    |   |
| Restructuring costs                          | (619                                     | ) (5                  | ) (624                | ) |
| Methodology differences:                     |                                          |                       |                       |   |
| Inventory/cost of sales                      | —                                        | —                     | —                     |   |
| Postretirement benefit expense               | 148                                      | —                     | 148                   |   |
| Stock-based compensation expense             | (180                                     | ) (7                  | ) (187                | ) |
| Financing costs                              | (396                                     | ) —                   | (396                  | ) |
| Currency                                     | (22                                      | ) —                   | (22                   | ) |
| Other income/expense methodology differences | (170                                     | ) —                   | (170                  | ) |
| Other methodology differences                | (34                                      | ) 6                   | (28                   | ) |
| Total consolidated profit before taxes       | \$ 940                                   | \$ 547                | \$ 1,487              |   |
| Nine Months Ended September 30, 2015         |                                          |                       |                       |   |
| Total profit from reportable segments        | \$ 4,417                                 | \$ 618                | \$ 5,035              |   |
| All Other operating segments                 | (36                                      | ) —                   | (36                   | ) |
| Cost centers                                 | 31                                       | —                     | 31                    |   |
| Corporate costs                              | (451                                     | ) —                   | (451                  | ) |
| Timing                                       | 15                                       | —                     | 15                    |   |
| Restructuring costs                          | (219                                     | ) —                   | (219                  | ) |
| Methodology differences:                     |                                          |                       |                       |   |
| Inventory/cost of sales                      | (30                                      | ) —                   | (30                   | ) |
| Postretirement benefit expense               | 282                                      | —                     | 282                   |   |
| Stock-based compensation expense             | (230                                     | ) (10                 | ) (240                | ) |
| Financing costs                              | (394                                     | ) —                   | (394                  | ) |
| Currency                                     | (226                                     | ) —                   | (226                  | ) |
| Other income/expense methodology differences | (48                                      | ) —                   | (48                   | ) |
| Other methodology differences                | (45                                      | ) 12                  | (33                   | ) |
| Total consolidated profit before taxes       | \$ 3,066                                 | \$ 620                | \$ 3,686              |   |

Table of Contents

## Reconciliation of Restructuring costs:

As noted above, restructuring costs are a reconciling item between Segment profit and Consolidated profit before taxes. Had we included the amounts in the segments' results, the profit would have been as shown below:

## Reconciliation of Restructuring costs:

| (Millions of dollars)                 | Segment<br>profit | Restructuring<br>costs | Segment<br>profit with<br>restructuring<br>costs |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------|------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| Three Months Ended September 30, 2016 |                   |                        |                                                  |
| Construction Industries               | \$ 326            | \$ (9 )                | \$ 317                                           |
| Resource Industries                   | (77 )             | (254 )                 | (331 )                                           |
| Energy & Transportation               | 572               | (39 )                  | 533                                              |
| Financial Products Segment            | 183               | (1 )                   | 182                                              |
| All Other operating segments          | (22 )             | (15 )                  | (37 )                                            |
| Total                                 | \$ 982            | \$ (318 )              | \$ 664                                           |

## Three Months Ended September 30, 2015

|                              |          |          |          |
|------------------------------|----------|----------|----------|
| Construction Industries      | \$ 354   | \$ (28 ) | \$ 326   |
| Resource Industries          | (42 )    | (39 )    | (81 )    |
| Energy & Transportation      | 683      | (10 )    | 673      |
| Financial Products Segment   | 207      | —        | 207      |
| All Other operating segments | (11 )    | (9 )     | (20 )    |
| Total                        | \$ 1,191 | \$ (86 ) | \$ 1,105 |

## Reconciliation of Restructuring costs:

| (Millions of dollars)                | Segment<br>profit | Restructuring<br>costs | Segment<br>profit with<br>restructuring<br>costs |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------|------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| Nine Months Ended September 30, 2016 |                   |                        |                                                  |
| Construction Industries              | \$ 1,316          | \$ (34 )               | \$ 1,282                                         |
| Resource Industries                  | (336 )            | (348 )                 | (684 )                                           |
| Energy & Transportation              | 1,584             | (194 )                 | 1,390                                            |
| Financial Products Segment           | 553               | (5 )                   | 548                                              |
| All Other operating segments         | (43 )             | (29 )                  | (72 )                                            |
| Total                                | \$ 3,074          | \$ (610 )              | \$ 2,464                                         |

## Nine Months Ended September 30, 2015

|                              |          |           |          |
|------------------------------|----------|-----------|----------|
| Construction Industries      | \$ 1,687 | \$ (83 )  | \$ 1,604 |
| Resource Industries          | 81       | (83 )     | (2 )     |
| Energy & Transportation      | 2,649    | (24 )     | 2,625    |
| Financial Products Segment   | 618      | —         | 618      |
| All Other operating segments | (36 )    | (12 )     | (48 )    |
| Total                        | \$ 4,999 | \$ (202 ) | \$ 4,797 |



Table of Contents

## Reconciliation of Assets:

| (Millions of dollars)                                    | Machinery,<br>Energy &<br>Transportation | Financial<br>Products | Consolidating<br>Adjustments | Consolidated<br>Total |   |
|----------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------|---|
| September 30, 2016                                       |                                          |                       |                              |                       |   |
| Total assets from reportable segments                    | \$ 21,656                                | \$36,330              | \$ —                         | \$ 57,986             |   |
| All Other operating segments                             | 1,368                                    | —                     | —                            | 1,368                 |   |
| Items not included in segment assets:                    |                                          |                       |                              |                       |   |
| Cash and short-term investments                          | 4,894                                    | —                     | —                            | 4,894                 |   |
| Intercompany receivables                                 | 1,877                                    | —                     | (1,877                       | ) —                   |   |
| Investment in Financial Products                         | 4,367                                    | —                     | (4,367                       | ) —                   |   |
| Deferred income taxes                                    | 3,311                                    | —                     | (821                         | ) 2,490               |   |
| Goodwill and intangible assets                           | 4,055                                    | —                     | —                            | 4,055                 |   |
| Property, plant and equipment – net and other assets     | 2,138                                    | —                     | —                            | 2,138                 |   |
| Operating lease methodology difference                   | (187                                     | ) —                   | —                            | (187                  | ) |
| Inventory methodology differences                        | (2,243                                   | ) —                   | —                            | (2,243                | ) |
| Intercompany loan included in Financial Products' assets | —                                        | —                     | (1,000                       | ) (1,000              | ) |
| Liabilities included in segment assets                   | 7,394                                    | —                     | —                            | 7,394                 |   |
| Other                                                    | (380                                     | ) (50                 | ) (63                        | ) (493                | ) |
| Total assets                                             | \$ 48,250                                | \$36,280              | \$ (8,128                    | ) \$ 76,402           |   |
| December 31, 2015                                        |                                          |                       |                              |                       |   |
| Total assets from reportable segments                    | \$ 23,876                                | \$35,729              | \$ —                         | \$ 59,605             |   |
| All Other operating segments                             | 1,405                                    | —                     | —                            | 1,405                 |   |
| Items not included in segment assets:                    |                                          |                       |                              |                       |   |
| Cash and short-term investments                          | 5,340                                    | —                     | —                            | 5,340                 |   |
| Intercompany receivables                                 | 1,087                                    | —                     | (1,087                       | ) —                   |   |
| Investment in Financial Products                         | 3,888                                    | —                     | (3,888                       | ) —                   |   |
| Deferred income taxes                                    | 3,208                                    | —                     | (793                         | ) 2,415               |   |
| Goodwill and intangible assets                           | 3,571                                    | —                     | —                            | 3,571                 |   |
| Property, plant and equipment – net and other assets     | 1,585                                    | —                     | —                            | 1,585                 |   |
| Operating lease methodology difference                   | (213                                     | ) —                   | —                            | (213                  | ) |
| Inventory methodology differences                        | (2,646                                   | ) —                   | —                            | (2,646                | ) |
| Liabilities included in segment assets                   | 8,017                                    | —                     | —                            | 8,017                 |   |
| Other                                                    | (567                                     | ) (93                 | ) (77                        | ) (737                | ) |
| Total assets                                             | \$ 48,551                                | \$35,636              | \$ (5,845                    | ) \$ 78,342           |   |

Table of Contents

## Reconciliations of Depreciation and amortization:

| (Millions of dollars)                                        | Machinery,<br>Energy &<br>Transportation | Financial<br>Products | Consolidated<br>Total |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| Three Months Ended September 30, 2016                        |                                          |                       |                       |
| Total depreciation and amortization from reportable segments | \$ 437                                   | \$ 215                | \$ 652                |
| Items not included in segment depreciation and amortization: |                                          |                       |                       |
| All Other operating segments                                 | 53                                       | —                     | 53                    |
| Cost centers                                                 | 39                                       | —                     | 39                    |
| Other                                                        | 6                                        | 11                    | 17                    |
| Total depreciation and amortization                          | \$ 535                                   | \$ 226                | \$ 761                |
| Three Months Ended September 30, 2015                        |                                          |                       |                       |
| Total depreciation and amortization from reportable segments | \$ 455                                   | \$ 210                | \$ 665                |
| Items not included in segment depreciation and amortization: |                                          |                       |                       |
| All Other operating segments                                 | 51                                       | —                     | 51                    |
| Cost centers                                                 | 39                                       | —                     | 39                    |
| Other                                                        | (7                                       | ) 10                  | 3                     |
| Total depreciation and amortization                          | \$ 538                                   | \$ 220                | \$ 758                |

## Reconciliations of Depreciation and amortization:

| (Millions of dollars)                                        | Machinery,<br>Energy &<br>Transportation | Financial<br>Products | Consolidated<br>Total |   |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|---|
| Nine Months Ended September 30, 2016                         |                                          |                       |                       |   |
| Total depreciation and amortization from reportable segments | \$ 1,309                                 | \$ 633                | \$ 1,942              |   |
| Items not included in segment depreciation and amortization: |                                          |                       |                       |   |
| All Other operating segments                                 | 158                                      | —                     | 158                   |   |
| Cost centers                                                 | 117                                      | —                     | 117                   |   |
| Other                                                        | 7                                        | 31                    | 38                    |   |
| Total depreciation and amortization                          | \$ 1,591                                 | \$ 664                | \$ 2,255              |   |
| Nine Months Ended September 30, 2015                         |                                          |                       |                       |   |
| Total depreciation and amortization from reportable segments | \$ 1,370                                 | \$ 638                | \$ 2,008              |   |
| Items not included in segment depreciation and amortization: |                                          |                       |                       |   |
| All Other operating segments                                 | 151                                      | —                     | 151                   |   |
| Cost centers                                                 | 114                                      | —                     | 114                   |   |
| Other                                                        | (27                                      | ) 26                  | (1                    | ) |
| Total depreciation and amortization                          | \$ 1,608                                 | \$ 664                | \$ 2,272              |   |

Table of Contents

## Reconciliations of Capital expenditures:

| (Millions of dollars)                               | Machinery,<br>Energy &<br>Transportation | Financial<br>Products | Consolidating<br>Adjustments | Consolidated<br>Total |
|-----------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------|
| Three Months Ended September 30, 2016               |                                          |                       |                              |                       |
| Total capital expenditures from reportable segments | \$ 211                                   | \$ 357                | \$ —                         | \$ 568                |
| Items not included in segment capital expenditures: |                                          |                       |                              |                       |
| All Other operating segments                        | 35                                       | —                     | —                            | 35                    |
| Cost centers                                        | 20                                       | —                     | —                            | 20                    |
| Timing                                              | 4                                        | —                     | —                            | 4                     |
| Other                                               | (30 )                                    | 22                    | (24 )                        | (32 )                 |
| Total capital expenditures                          | \$ 240                                   | \$ 379                | \$ (24 )                     | \$ 595                |

## Three Months Ended September 30, 2015

|                                                     |        |        |         |        |
|-----------------------------------------------------|--------|--------|---------|--------|
| Total capital expenditures from reportable segments | \$ 314 | \$ 359 | \$ —    | \$ 673 |
| Items not included in segment capital expenditures: |        |        |         |        |
| All Other operating segments                        | 33     | —      | —       | 33     |
| Cost centers                                        | 52     | —      | —       | 52     |
| Timing                                              | (35 )  | —      | —       | (35 )  |
| Other                                               | (28 )  | 35     | (4 )    | 3      |
| Total capital expenditures                          | \$ 336 | \$ 394 | \$ (4 ) | \$ 726 |

## Reconciliations of Capital expenditures:

| (Millions of dollars)                               | Machinery,<br>Energy &<br>Transportation | Financial<br>Products | Consolidating<br>Adjustments | Consolidated<br>Total |
|-----------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------|
| Nine Months Ended September 30, 2016                |                                          |                       |                              |                       |
| Total capital expenditures from reportable segments | \$ 616                                   | \$ 1,266              | \$ —                         | \$ 1,882              |
| Items not included in segment capital expenditures: |                                          |                       |                              |                       |
| All Other operating segments                        | 102                                      | —                     | —                            | 102                   |
| Cost centers                                        | 48                                       | —                     | —                            | 48                    |
| Timing                                              | 221                                      | —                     | —                            | 221                   |
| Other                                               | (129 )                                   | 117                   | (41 )                        | (53 )                 |
| Total capital expenditures                          | \$ 858                                   | \$ 1,383              | \$ (41 )                     | \$ 2,200              |

## Nine Months Ended September 30, 2015

|                                                     |          |          |          |          |
|-----------------------------------------------------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| Total capital expenditures from reportable segments | \$ 873   | \$ 995   | \$ —     | \$ 1,868 |
| Items not included in segment capital expenditures: |          |          |          |          |
| All Other operating segments                        | 86       | —        | —        | 86       |
| Cost centers                                        | 98       | —        | —        | 98       |
| Timing                                              | 199      | —        | —        | 199      |
| Other                                               | (161 )   | 130      | (23 )    | (54 )    |
| Total capital expenditures                          | \$ 1,095 | \$ 1,125 | \$ (23 ) | \$ 2,197 |

## Table of Contents

### 16. Cat Financial financing activities

#### Allowance for credit losses

The allowance for credit losses is an estimate of the losses inherent in Cat Financial's finance receivable portfolio and includes consideration of accounts that have been individually identified as impaired, as well as pools of finance receivables where it is probable that certain receivables in the pool are impaired but the individual accounts cannot yet be identified. In identifying and measuring impairment, management takes into consideration past loss experience, known and inherent risks in the portfolio, adverse situations that may affect the borrower's ability to repay, estimated value of underlying collateral and current economic conditions.

Accounts are identified for individual review based on past-due status and using information available about the customer, such as financial statements, news reports and published credit ratings, as well as general information regarding industry trends and the economic environment in which Cat Financial's customers operate. The allowance for credit losses attributable to finance receivables that are individually evaluated and determined to be impaired is based either on the present value of expected future cash flows discounted at the receivables' effective interest rate or the fair value of the collateral for collateral-dependent receivables. In determining collateral value, Cat Financial estimates the current fair market value of the collateral less selling costs. Cat Financial also considers credit enhancements such as additional collateral and contractual third-party guarantees. The allowance for credit losses attributable to the remaining accounts not yet individually identified as impaired is estimated based on loss forecast models utilizing probabilities of default, our estimate of the loss emergence period and the estimated loss given default. In addition, qualitative factors not able to be fully captured in the loss forecast models including industry trends, macroeconomic factors and model imprecision are considered in the evaluation of the adequacy of the allowance for credit losses. These qualitative factors are subjective and require a degree of management judgment.

Cat Financial's allowance for credit losses is segregated into two portfolio segments:

- Customer - Finance receivables with retail customers.
- Dealer - Finance receivables with Caterpillar dealers.

A portfolio segment is the level at which the company develops a systematic methodology for determining its allowance for credit losses.

Cat Financial further evaluates portfolio segments by the class of finance receivables, which is defined as a level of information (below a portfolio segment) in which the finance receivables have the same initial measurement attribute and a similar method for assessing and monitoring credit risk. Typically, Cat Financial's finance receivables within a geographic area have similar credit risk profiles and methods for assessing and monitoring credit risk. Cat Financial's classes, which align with management reporting for credit losses, are as follows:

•North America - Includes finance receivables originated in the United States or Canada.

•Europe - Includes finance receivables originated in Europe, Africa, Middle East and the Commonwealth of Independent States.

•Asia Pacific - Includes finance receivables originated in Australia, New Zealand, China, Japan, South Korea and Southeast Asia.

•Mining - Includes finance receivables related to large mining customers worldwide and project financing in various countries.

•Latin America - Includes finance receivables originated in Central and South American countries.

•Caterpillar Power Finance - Includes finance receivables related to marine vessels with Caterpillar engines worldwide and Caterpillar electrical power generation, gas compression and co-generation systems and non-Caterpillar

equipment that is powered by these systems worldwide.

Table of Contents

An analysis of the allowance for credit losses was as follows:

| (Millions of dollars)                            | September 30, 2016 |        |        |
|--------------------------------------------------|--------------------|--------|--------|
| Allowance for Credit Losses:                     | Customer           | Dealer | Total  |
| Balance at beginning of year                     | \$327              | \$9    | \$336  |
| Receivables written off                          | (118 )             | —      | (118 ) |
| Recoveries on receivables previously written off | 25                 | —      | 25     |
| Provision for credit losses                      | 93                 | 2      | 95     |
| Other                                            | 6                  | —      | 6      |
| Balance at end of period                         | \$333              | \$11   | \$344  |
| Individually evaluated for impairment            | \$85               | \$—    | \$85   |
| Collectively evaluated for impairment            | 248                | 11     | 259    |
| Ending Balance                                   | \$333              | \$11   | \$344  |

## Recorded Investment in Finance Receivables:

|                                       |          |         |          |
|---------------------------------------|----------|---------|----------|
| Individually evaluated for impairment | \$819    | \$—     | \$819    |
| Collectively evaluated for impairment | 18,522   | 3,534   | 22,056   |
| Ending Balance                        | \$19,341 | \$3,534 | \$22,875 |

| (Millions of dollars)                            | December 31, 2015 |        |        |
|--------------------------------------------------|-------------------|--------|--------|
| Allowance for Credit Losses:                     | Customer          | Dealer | Total  |
| Balance at beginning of year                     | \$388             | \$10   | \$398  |
| Receivables written off                          | (196 )            | —      | (196 ) |
| Recoveries on receivables previously written off | 41                | —      | 41     |
| Provision for credit losses                      | 119               | (1 )   | 118    |
| Other                                            | (25 )             | —      | (25 )  |
| Balance at end of year                           | \$327             | \$9    | \$336  |
| Individually evaluated for impairment            | \$65              | \$—    | \$65   |
| Collectively evaluated for impairment            | 262               | 9      | 271    |
| Ending Balance                                   | \$327             | \$9    | \$336  |

## Recorded Investment in Finance Receivables:

|                                       |          |         |          |
|---------------------------------------|----------|---------|----------|
| Individually evaluated for impairment | \$601    | \$—     | \$601    |
| Collectively evaluated for impairment | 18,788   | 3,570   | 22,358   |
| Ending Balance                        | \$19,389 | \$3,570 | \$22,959 |

## Credit quality of finance receivables

At origination, Cat Financial evaluates credit risk based on a variety of credit quality factors including prior payment experience, customer financial information, credit-rating agency ratings, loan-to-value ratios and other internal metrics. On an ongoing basis, Cat Financial monitors credit quality based on past-due status and collection experience as there is a meaningful correlation between the past-due status of customers and the risk of loss.

In determining past-due status, Cat Financial considers the entire finance receivable balance past due when any installment is over 30 days past due. The tables below summarize the recorded investment of finance receivables by aging category.

Table of Contents

| (Millions of dollars)     | September 30, 2016           |                              |                            |                   | Current  | Recorded<br>Investment<br>in Finance<br>Receivables | 91+ Still<br>Accruing |
|---------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------|----------|-----------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|
|                           | 31-60<br>Days<br>Past<br>Due | 61-90<br>Days<br>Past<br>Due | 91+<br>Days<br>Past<br>Due | Total Past<br>Due |          |                                                     |                       |
| Customer                  |                              |                              |                            |                   |          |                                                     |                       |
| North America             | \$66                         | \$ 18                        | \$72                       | \$ 156            | \$7,903  | \$ 8,059                                            | \$ 10                 |
| Europe                    | 21                           | 16                           | 83                         | 120               | 2,424    | 2,544                                               | 47                    |
| Asia Pacific              | 28                           | 10                           | 20                         | 58                | 1,506    | 1,564                                               | 4                     |
| Mining                    | 4                            | 1                            | 63                         | 68                | 1,802    | 1,870                                               | —                     |
| Latin America             | 57                           | 39                           | 222                        | 318               | 1,866    | 2,184                                               | —                     |
| Caterpillar Power Finance | 1                            | 5                            | 72                         | 78                | 3,042    | 3,120                                               | 12                    |
| Dealer                    |                              |                              |                            |                   |          |                                                     |                       |
| North America             | —                            | —                            | —                          | —                 | 2,069    | 2,069                                               | —                     |
| Europe                    | —                            | —                            | —                          | —                 | 127      | 127                                                 | —                     |
| Asia Pacific              | —                            | —                            | —                          | —                 | 599      | 599                                                 | —                     |
| Mining                    | —                            | —                            | —                          | —                 | 4        | 4                                                   | —                     |
| Latin America             | —                            | —                            | —                          | —                 | 733      | 733                                                 | —                     |
| Caterpillar Power Finance | —                            | —                            | —                          | —                 | 2        | 2                                                   | —                     |
| Total                     | \$177                        | \$ 89                        | \$532                      | \$ 798            | \$22,077 | \$ 22,875                                           | \$ 73                 |

| (Millions of dollars)     | December 31, 2015            |                              |                            |                   | Current  | Recorded<br>Investment<br>in Finance<br>Receivables | 91+ Still<br>Accruing |
|---------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------|----------|-----------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|
|                           | 31-60<br>Days<br>Past<br>Due | 61-90<br>Days<br>Past<br>Due | 91+<br>Days<br>Past<br>Due | Total Past<br>Due |          |                                                     |                       |
| Customer                  |                              |                              |                            |                   |          |                                                     |                       |
| North America             | \$45                         | \$ 12                        | \$30                       | \$ 87             | \$7,850  | \$ 7,937                                            | \$ 4                  |
| Europe                    | 18                           | 7                            | 44                         | 69                | 2,358    | 2,427                                               | 9                     |
| Asia Pacific              | 21                           | 12                           | 21                         | 54                | 1,647    | 1,701                                               | 6                     |
| Mining                    | 6                            | 1                            | 68                         | 75                | 1,793    | 1,868                                               | 1                     |
| Latin America             | 45                           | 31                           | 199                        | 275               | 1,998    | 2,273                                               | —                     |
| Caterpillar Power Finance | —                            | 1                            | 35                         | 36                | 3,147    | 3,183                                               | 2                     |
| Dealer                    |                              |                              |                            |                   |          |                                                     |                       |
| North America             | —                            | —                            | —                          | —                 | 2,209    | 2,209                                               | —                     |
| Europe                    | —                            | —                            | —                          | —                 | 149      | 149                                                 | —                     |
| Asia Pacific              | —                            | —                            | —                          | —                 | 552      | 552                                                 | —                     |
| Mining                    | —                            | —                            | —                          | —                 | 4        | 4                                                   | —                     |
| Latin America             | —                            | —                            | —                          | —                 | 653      | 653                                                 | —                     |
| Caterpillar Power Finance | —                            | —                            | —                          | —                 | 3        | 3                                                   | —                     |
| Total                     | \$135                        | \$ 64                        | \$397                      | \$ 596            | \$22,363 | \$ 22,959                                           | \$ 22                 |

Impaired finance receivables

For all classes, a finance receivable is considered impaired, based on current information and events, if it is probable that Cat Financial will be unable to collect all amounts due according to the contractual terms. Impaired finance receivables include finance receivables that have been restructured and are considered to be troubled debt restructurings.

Table of Contents

There were no impaired finance receivables as of September 30, 2016 or December 31, 2015, for the Dealer portfolio segment. Cat Financial's recorded investment in impaired finance receivables and the related unpaid principal balances and allowance for the Customer portfolio segment were as follows:

| (Millions of dollars)                                          | September 30, 2016  |                          |                   | December 31, 2015   |                          |                   |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|--------------------------|-------------------|---------------------|--------------------------|-------------------|
|                                                                | Recorded Investment | Unpaid Principal Balance | Related Allowance | Recorded Investment | Unpaid Principal Balance | Related Allowance |
| <b>Impaired Finance Receivables With No Allowance Recorded</b> |                     |                          |                   |                     |                          |                   |
| North America                                                  | \$21                | \$ 21                    | \$ —              | \$12                | \$ 12                    | \$ —              |
| Europe                                                         | 49                  | 48                       | —                 | 41                  | 41                       | —                 |
| Asia Pacific                                                   | 2                   | 2                        | —                 | 1                   | 1                        | —                 |
| Mining                                                         | 119                 | 118                      | —                 | 84                  | 84                       | —                 |
| Latin America                                                  | 73                  | 73                       | —                 | 28                  | 28                       | —                 |
| Caterpillar Power Finance                                      | 290                 | 289                      | —                 | 242                 | 241                      | —                 |
| Total                                                          | \$554               | \$ 551                   | \$ —              | \$408               | \$ 407                   | \$ —              |
| <b>Impaired Finance Receivables With An Allowance Recorded</b> |                     |                          |                   |                     |                          |                   |
| North America                                                  | \$50                | \$ 48                    | \$ 19             | \$14                | \$ 13                    | \$ 4              |
| Europe                                                         | 9                   | 9                        | 5                 | 11                  | 10                       | 5                 |
| Asia Pacific                                                   | 33                  | 33                       | 5                 | 34                  | 34                       | 4                 |
| Mining                                                         | 38                  | 38                       | 6                 | 11                  | 11                       | 3                 |
| Latin America                                                  | 91                  | 103                      | 33                | 53                  | 53                       | 21                |
| Caterpillar Power Finance                                      | 44                  | 44                       | 17                | 70                  | 70                       | 28                |
| Total                                                          | \$265               | \$ 275                   | \$ 85             | \$193               | \$ 191                   | \$ 65             |
| <b>Total Impaired Finance Receivables</b>                      |                     |                          |                   |                     |                          |                   |
| North America                                                  | \$71                | \$ 69                    | \$ 19             | \$26                | \$ 25                    | \$ 4              |
| Europe                                                         | 58                  | 57                       | 5                 | 52                  | 51                       | 5                 |
| Asia Pacific                                                   | 35                  | 35                       | 5                 | 35                  | 35                       | 4                 |
| Mining                                                         | 157                 | 156                      | 6                 | 95                  | 95                       | 3                 |
| Latin America                                                  | 164                 | 176                      | 33                | 81                  | 81                       | 21                |
| Caterpillar Power Finance                                      | 334                 | 333                      | 17                | 312                 | 311                      | 28                |
| Total                                                          | \$819               | \$ 826                   | \$ 85             | \$601               | \$ 598                   | \$ 65             |

Table of Contents

| (Millions of dollars)                                   | Three Months Ended<br>September 30, 2016 |                               | Three Months Ended<br>September 30, 2015 |                               |
|---------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
|                                                         | Average Receivable<br>Investment         | Interest Income<br>Recognized | Average Receivable<br>Investment         | Interest Income<br>Recognized |
| Impaired Finance Receivables With No Allowance Recorded |                                          |                               |                                          |                               |
| North America                                           | \$ 24                                    | \$ —                          | \$ 10                                    | \$ 1                          |
| Europe                                                  | 49                                       | 1                             | 43                                       | —                             |
| Asia Pacific                                            | 1                                        | —                             | 1                                        | —                             |
| Mining                                                  | 90                                       | 2                             | 63                                       | —                             |
| Latin America                                           | 58                                       | —                             | 32                                       | —                             |
| Caterpillar Power Finance                               | 282                                      | 3                             | 165                                      | 1                             |
| Total                                                   | \$ 504                                   | \$ 6                          | \$ 314                                   | \$ 2                          |
| Impaired Finance Receivables With An Allowance Recorded |                                          |                               |                                          |                               |
| North America                                           | \$ 42                                    | \$ —                          | \$ 10                                    | \$ —                          |
| Europe                                                  | 10                                       | —                             | 15                                       | —                             |
| Asia Pacific                                            | 35                                       | —                             | 41                                       | —                             |
| Mining                                                  | 19                                       | —                             | 9                                        | —                             |
| Latin America                                           | 67                                       | 1                             | 69                                       | 1                             |
| Caterpillar Power Finance                               | 43                                       | —                             | 125                                      | 2                             |
| Total                                                   | \$ 216                                   | \$ 1                          | \$ 269                                   | \$ 3                          |
| Total Impaired Finance Receivables                      |                                          |                               |                                          |                               |
| North America                                           | \$ 66                                    | \$ —                          | \$ 20                                    | \$ 1                          |
| Europe                                                  | 59                                       | 1                             | 58                                       | —                             |
| Asia Pacific                                            | 36                                       | —                             | 42                                       | —                             |
| Mining                                                  | 109                                      | 2                             | 72                                       | —                             |
| Latin America                                           | 125                                      | 1                             | 101                                      | 1                             |
| Caterpillar Power Finance                               | 325                                      | 3                             | 290                                      | 3                             |
| Total                                                   | \$ 720                                   | \$ 7                          | \$ 583                                   | \$ 5                          |

Table of Contents

| (Millions of dollars)                                   | Nine Months Ended<br>September 30, 2016 |                               | Nine Months Ended<br>September 30, 2015 |                               |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
|                                                         | Average Recorded<br>Investment          | Interest Income<br>Recognized | Average Recorded<br>Investment          | Interest Income<br>Recognized |
| Impaired Finance Receivables With No Allowance Recorded |                                         |                               |                                         |                               |
| North America                                           | \$ 19                                   | \$ 1                          | \$ 12                                   | \$ 1                          |
| Europe                                                  | 45                                      | 1                             | 43                                      | —                             |
| Asia Pacific                                            | 2                                       | —                             | 2                                       | —                             |
| Mining                                                  | 84                                      | 3                             | 80                                      | 3                             |
| Latin America                                           | 39                                      | —                             | 32                                      | —                             |
| Caterpillar Power Finance                               | 269                                     | 8                             | 157                                     | 3                             |
| Total                                                   | \$ 458                                  | \$ 13                         | \$ 326                                  | \$ 7                          |
| Impaired Finance Receivables With An Allowance Recorded |                                         |                               |                                         |                               |
| North America                                           | \$ 28                                   | \$ —                          | \$ 7                                    | \$ —                          |
| Europe                                                  | 11                                      | —                             | 15                                      | 1                             |
| Asia Pacific                                            | 34                                      | 2                             | 33                                      | 1                             |
| Mining                                                  | 15                                      | —                             | 47                                      | 1                             |
| Latin America                                           | 59                                      | 2                             | 56                                      | 2                             |
| Caterpillar Power Finance                               | 50                                      | 1                             | 128                                     | 3                             |
| Total                                                   | \$ 197                                  | \$ 5                          | \$ 286                                  | \$ 8                          |
| Total Impaired Finance Receivables                      |                                         |                               |                                         |                               |
| North America                                           | \$ 47                                   | \$ 1                          | \$ 19                                   | \$ 1                          |
| Europe                                                  | 56                                      | 1                             | 58                                      | 1                             |
| Asia Pacific                                            | 36                                      | 2                             | 35                                      | 1                             |
| Mining                                                  | 99                                      | 3                             | 127                                     | 4                             |
| Latin America                                           | 98                                      | 2                             | 88                                      | 2                             |
| Caterpillar Power Finance                               | 319                                     | 9                             | 285                                     | 6                             |
| Total                                                   | \$ 655                                  | \$ 18                         | \$ 612                                  | \$ 15                         |

Recognition of income is suspended and the finance receivable is placed on non-accrual status when management determines that collection of future income is not probable (generally after 120 days past due). Recognition is resumed and previously suspended income is recognized when the finance receivable becomes current and collection of remaining amounts is considered probable. Payments received while the finance receivable is on non-accrual status are applied to interest and principal in accordance with the contractual terms.

As of September 30, 2016 and December 31, 2015, there were no finance receivables on non-accrual status for the Dealer portfolio segment.

The recorded investment in customer finance receivables on non-accrual status was as follows:

| (Millions of dollars) | September 30, December 31, |       |
|-----------------------|----------------------------|-------|
|                       | 2016                       | 2015  |
| North America         | \$ 71                      | \$ 31 |
| Europe                | 38                         | 39    |
| Asia Pacific          | 16                         | 15    |

Edgar Filing: CATERPILLAR INC - Form 10-Q

|                           |        |        |
|---------------------------|--------|--------|
| Mining                    | 131    | 106    |
| Latin America             | 299    | 217    |
| Caterpillar Power Finance | 69     | 77     |
| Total                     | \$ 624 | \$ 485 |

56

---

Table of Contents

## Troubled Debt Restructurings

A restructuring of a finance receivable constitutes a troubled debt restructuring (TDR) when the lender grants a concession it would not otherwise consider to a borrower experiencing financial difficulties. Concessions granted may include extended contract maturities, inclusion of interest only periods, below market interest rates, extended skip payment periods and reduction of principal and/or accrued interest.

As of September 30, 2016 and December 31, 2015, there were \$11 million and \$3 million, respectively, of additional funds committed to lend to a borrower whose terms have been modified in a TDR.

There were no finance receivables modified as TDRs during the three and nine months ended September 30, 2016 or 2015 for the Dealer portfolio segment. Finance receivables in the Customer portfolio segment modified as TDRs during the three and nine months ended September 30, 2016 and 2015, were as follows:

| (Millions of dollars)      | Three Months Ended September 30, 2016 |                             |                              | Three Months Ended September 30, 2015 |                             |                              |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------|------------------------------|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------|------------------------------|
|                            | Number of Contracts                   | Pre-TDR Recorded Investment | Post-TDR Recorded Investment | Number of Contracts                   | Pre-TDR Recorded Investment | Post-TDR Recorded Investment |
| North America              | 2                                     | \$ —                        | \$ —                         | 6                                     | \$ —                        | \$ —                         |
| Europe                     | —                                     | —                           | —                            | 4                                     | —                           | —                            |
| Asia Pacific               | 4                                     | 1                           | 1                            | 1                                     | 1                           | 1                            |
| Mining                     | 1                                     | 33                          | 30                           | 2                                     | 15                          | 14                           |
| Latin America <sup>1</sup> | 341                                   | 105                         | 74                           | 10                                    | 1                           | 2                            |
| Caterpillar Power Finance  | 4                                     | 13                          | 13                           | 8                                     | 93                          | 79                           |
| Total                      | 352                                   | \$ 152                      | \$ 118                       | 31                                    | \$ 110                      | \$ 96                        |

|                           | Nine Months Ended September 30, 2016 |                             |                              | Nine Months Ended September 30, 2015 |                             |                              |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------|------------------------------|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------|------------------------------|
|                           | Number of Contracts                  | Pre-TDR Recorded Investment | Post-TDR Recorded Investment | Number of Contracts                  | Pre-TDR Recorded Investment | Post-TDR Recorded Investment |
| North America             | 15                                   | \$ 16                       | \$ 16                        | 10                                   | \$ 1                        | \$ 1                         |
| Europe                    | 3                                    | 11                          | 8                            | 23                                   | 2                           | 2                            |
| Asia Pacific              | 8                                    | 4                           | 4                            | 19                                   | 1                           | 1                            |
| Mining                    | 2                                    | 43                          | 35                           | 2                                    | 15                          | 14                           |
| Latin America             | 431                                  | 117                         | 87                           | 10                                   | 1                           | 2                            |
| Caterpillar Power Finance | 34                                   | 196                         | 177                          | 12                                   | 197                         | 180                          |
| Total                     | 493                                  | \$ 387                      | \$ 327                       | 76                                   | \$ 217                      | \$ 200                       |

<sup>1</sup> In Latin America, 321 contracts with a pre-TDR recorded investment of \$94 million and a post-TDR recorded investment of \$64 million are related to four customers.

Table of Contents

TDRs in the Customer portfolio segment with a payment default during the three and nine months ended September 30, 2016 and 2015, which had been modified within twelve months prior to the default date, were as follows:

| (Millions of dollars) | Three Months Ended<br>September 30, 2016 |                                    | Three Months Ended<br>September 30, 2015 |                                    |
|-----------------------|------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
|                       | Number of<br>Contracts                   | Post-TDR<br>Recorded<br>Investment | Number of<br>Contracts                   | Post-TDR<br>Recorded<br>Investment |
| North America         | 1                                        | \$ —                               | 5                                        | \$ —                               |
| Europe                | 1                                        | —                                  | —                                        | —                                  |
| Latin America         | 2                                        | —                                  | —                                        | —                                  |
| Total                 | 4                                        | \$ —                               | 5                                        | \$ —                               |

|               | Nine Months Ended<br>September 30, 2016 |                                    | Nine Months Ended<br>September 30, 2015 |                                    |
|---------------|-----------------------------------------|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
|               | Number of<br>Contracts                  | Post-TDR<br>Recorded<br>Investment | Number of<br>Contracts                  | Post-TDR<br>Recorded<br>Investment |
| North America | 14                                      | \$ 3                               | 10                                      | \$ 1                               |
| Europe        | 14                                      | 1                                  | —                                       | —                                  |
| Asia Pacific  | 3                                       | —                                  | —                                       | —                                  |
| Latin America | 4                                       | —                                  | 1                                       | —                                  |
| Total         | 35                                      | \$ 4                               | 11                                      | \$ 1                               |

## 17. Fair value disclosures

### A. Fair value measurements

The guidance on fair value measurements defines fair value as the exchange price that would be received for an asset or paid to transfer a liability (an exit price) in the principal or most advantageous market for the asset or liability in an orderly transaction between market participants. This guidance also specifies a fair value hierarchy based upon the observability of inputs used in valuation techniques. Observable inputs (highest level) reflect market data obtained from independent sources, while unobservable inputs (lowest level) reflect internally developed market assumptions. In accordance with this guidance, fair value measurements are classified under the following hierarchy:

Level 1 – Quoted prices for identical instruments in active markets.

Level 2 – Quoted prices for similar instruments in active markets; quoted prices for identical or similar instruments in markets that are not active; and model-derived valuations in which all significant inputs or significant value-drivers are observable in active markets.

Level 3 – Model-derived valuations in which one or more significant inputs or significant value-drivers are unobservable.

When available, we use quoted market prices to determine fair value, and we classify such measurements within Level 1. In some cases where market prices are not available, we make use of observable market based inputs to calculate fair value, in which case the measurements are classified within Level 2. If quoted or observable market prices are not

available, fair value is based upon valuations in which one or more significant inputs are unobservable, including internally developed models that use, where possible, current market-based parameters such as interest rates, yield curves and currency rates. These measurements are classified within Level 3.

Fair value measurements are classified according to the lowest level input or value-driver that is significant to the valuation. A measurement may therefore be classified within Level 3 even though there may be significant inputs that are readily observable.

Fair value measurement includes the consideration of nonperformance risk. Nonperformance risk refers to the risk that an obligation (either by a counterparty or Caterpillar) will not be fulfilled. For financial assets traded in an active market (Level 1 and certain Level 2), the nonperformance risk is included in the market price. For certain other financial assets and liabilities (certain Level 2 and Level 3), our fair value calculations have been adjusted accordingly.

Table of Contents

Investments in debt and equity securities

Investments in certain debt and equity securities, primarily at Insurance Services, have been classified as available-for-sale and recorded at fair value. Fair values for our U.S. treasury bonds and large capitalization value and smaller company growth equity securities are based upon valuations for identical instruments in active markets. Fair values for other government bonds, corporate bonds and mortgage-backed debt securities are based upon models that take into consideration such market-based factors as recent sales, risk-free yield curves and prices of similarly rated bonds.

In addition, Insurance Services has an equity investment in a real estate investment trust (REIT) which is recorded at fair value based on the net asset value (NAV) of the investment.

See Note 8 for additional information on our investments in debt and equity securities.

Derivative financial instruments

The fair value of interest rate contracts is primarily based on models that utilize the appropriate market-based forward swap curves and zero-coupon interest rates to determine discounted cash flows. The fair value of foreign currency and commodity forward, option and cross currency contracts is based on a valuation model that discounts cash flows resulting from the differential between the contract price and the market-based forward rate.

Table of Contents

Assets and liabilities measured on a recurring basis at fair value, primarily related to Financial Products, included in our Consolidated Statement of Financial Position as of September 30, 2016 and December 31, 2015 are summarized below:

| (Millions of dollars)                    | September 30, 2016 |         |         | Total                                  |
|------------------------------------------|--------------------|---------|---------|----------------------------------------|
|                                          | Level 1            | Level 2 | Level 3 | Assets / Liabilities,<br>at Fair Value |
| <b>Assets</b>                            |                    |         |         |                                        |
| Available-for-sale securities            |                    |         |         |                                        |
| Government debt                          |                    |         |         |                                        |
| U.S. treasury bonds                      | \$10               | \$—     | \$ —    | \$ 10                                  |
| Other U.S. and non-U.S. government bonds | —                  | 68      | —       | 68                                     |
| Corporate bonds                          |                    |         |         |                                        |
| Corporate bonds                          | —                  | 710     | —       | 710                                    |
| Asset-backed securities                  | —                  | 135     | —       | 135                                    |
| Mortgage-backed debt securities          |                    |         |         |                                        |
| U.S. governmental agency                 | —                  | 286     | —       | 286                                    |
| Residential                              | —                  | 10      | —       | 10                                     |
| Commercial                               | —                  | 63      | —       | 63                                     |
| Equity securities                        |                    |         |         |                                        |
| Large capitalization value               | 299                | —       | —       | 299                                    |
| Smaller company growth                   | 57                 | —       | —       | 57                                     |
| Total available-for-sale securities      | 366                | 1,272   | —       | 1,638                                  |
| REIT                                     | —                  | —       | 72      | 72                                     |
| Total Assets                             | \$366              | \$1,272 | \$ 72   | \$ 1,710                               |
| <b>Liabilities</b>                       |                    |         |         |                                        |
| Derivative financial instruments, net    | —                  | 29      | —       | 29                                     |
| Total Liabilities                        | \$—                | \$29    | \$ —    | \$ 29                                  |

| (Millions of dollars)                    | December 31, 2015 |         |         | Total                                  |
|------------------------------------------|-------------------|---------|---------|----------------------------------------|
|                                          | Level 1           | Level 2 | Level 3 | Assets / Liabilities,<br>at Fair Value |
| <b>Assets</b>                            |                   |         |         |                                        |
| Available-for-sale securities            |                   |         |         |                                        |
| Government debt                          |                   |         |         |                                        |
| U.S. treasury bonds                      | \$9               | \$—     | \$ —    | \$ 9                                   |
| Other U.S. and non-U.S. government bonds | —                 | 72      | —       | 72                                     |
| Corporate bonds                          |                   |         |         |                                        |
| Corporate bonds                          | —                 | 708     | —       | 708                                    |
| Asset-backed securities                  | —                 | 129     | —       | 129                                    |
| Mortgage-backed debt securities          |                   |         |         |                                        |
| U.S. governmental agency                 | —                 | 292     | —       | 292                                    |
| Residential                              | —                 | 12      | —       | 12                                     |
| Commercial                               | —                 | 61      | —       | 61                                     |
| Equity securities                        |                   |         |         |                                        |
| Large capitalization value               | 273               | —       | —       | 273                                    |

Edgar Filing: CATERPILLAR INC - Form 10-Q

|                                       |       |          |       |          |
|---------------------------------------|-------|----------|-------|----------|
| Smaller company growth                | 54    | —        | —     | 54       |
| Total available-for-sale securities   | 336   | 1,274    | —     | 1,610    |
| REIT                                  | —     | —        | 25    | 25       |
| Derivative financial instruments, net | —     | 49       | —     | 49       |
| Total Assets                          | \$336 | \$ 1,323 | \$ 25 | \$ 1,684 |

Table of Contents

The fair value of our REIT investment is measured based on NAV, which is considered a Level 3 input. A roll-forward for the nine months ended September 30, 2016 of our REIT investment is as follows.

| (Millions of dollars)                                                    | REIT  |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------|
| Balance at December 31, 2015                                             | \$ 25 |
| Purchases of securities                                                  | 45    |
| Sale of securities                                                       | —     |
| Gains (losses) included in Accumulated other comprehensive income (loss) | 2     |
| Balance at September 30, 2016                                            | \$ 72 |

In addition to the amounts above, Cat Financial impaired loans are subject to measurement at fair value on a nonrecurring basis and are classified as Level 3 measurements. A loan is considered impaired when management determines that collection of contractual amounts due is not probable. In these cases, an allowance for credit losses may be established based either on the present value of expected future cash flows discounted at the receivables' effective interest rate, or the fair value of the collateral for collateral-dependent receivables. In determining collateral value, Cat Financial estimates the current fair market value of the collateral less selling costs. Cat Financial had impaired loans with a fair value of \$122 million and \$91 million as of September 30, 2016 and December 31, 2015, respectively.

#### B. Fair values of financial instruments

In addition to the methods and assumptions we use to record the fair value of financial instruments as discussed in the Fair value measurements section above, we used the following methods and assumptions to estimate the fair value of our financial instruments:

##### Cash and short-term investments

Carrying amount approximated fair value.

##### Restricted cash and short-term investments

Carrying amount approximated fair value. Restricted cash and short-term investments are included in Prepaid expenses and other current assets in the Consolidated Statement of Financial Position.

##### Finance receivables

Fair value was estimated by discounting the future cash flows using current rates, representative of receivables with similar remaining maturities.

##### Wholesale inventory receivables

Fair value was estimated by discounting the future cash flows using current rates, representative of receivables with similar remaining maturities.

##### Short-term borrowings

Carrying amount approximated fair value.

##### Long-term debt

Fair value for fixed and floating rate debt was estimated based on quoted market prices.

##### Guarantees

The fair value of guarantees is based upon our estimate of the premium a market participant would require to issue the same guarantee in a stand-alone arms-length transaction with an unrelated party. If quoted or observable market prices are not available, fair value is based upon internally developed models that utilize current market-based assumptions.

Table of Contents

Please refer to the table below for the fair values of our financial instruments.

| (Millions of dollars)                                                          | Fair Value of Financial Instruments |                    |                   |                   |                   | Reference |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|--------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-----------|
|                                                                                | September 30, 2016                  | September 30, 2016 | December 31, 2015 | December 31, 2015 | Fair Value Levels |           |
|                                                                                | Carrying Amount                     | Fair Value         | Carrying Amount   | Fair Value        |                   |           |
| <b>Assets</b>                                                                  |                                     |                    |                   |                   |                   |           |
| Cash and short-term investments                                                | \$6,113                             | \$6,113            | \$6,460           | \$6,460           | 1                 |           |
| Restricted cash and short-term investments                                     | 28                                  | 28                 | 52                | 52                | 1                 |           |
| Investments in debt and equity securities                                      | 1,710                               | 1,710              | 1,635             | 1,635             | 1, 2 & 3          | Note 8    |
| Finance receivables – net (excluding finance leases <sup>1</sup> )             | 16,571                              | 16,565             | 16,515            | 16,551            | 3                 | Note 16   |
| Wholesale inventory receivables – net (excluding finance leases <sup>1</sup> ) | 1,633                               | 1,601              | 1,821             | 1,775             | 3                 | Note 16   |
| Foreign currency contracts – net                                               | —                                   | —                  | 13                | 13                | 2                 | Note 4    |
| Interest rate contracts – net                                                  | 3                                   | 3                  | 48                | 48                | 2                 | Note 4    |
| Commodity contracts – net                                                      | 6                                   | 6                  | —                 | —                 | 2                 | Note 4    |
| <b>Liabilities</b>                                                             |                                     |                    |                   |                   |                   |           |
| Short-term borrowings                                                          | 6,965                               | 6,965              | 6,967             | 6,967             | 1                 |           |
| Long-term debt (including amounts due within one year)                         |                                     |                    |                   |                   |                   |           |
| Machinery, Energy & Transportation                                             | 8,985                               | 11,037             | 9,477             | 10,691            | 2                 |           |
| Financial Products                                                             | 21,160                              | 21,669             | 21,569            | 21,904            | 2                 |           |
| Foreign currency contracts – net                                               | 38                                  | 38                 | —                 | —                 | 2                 | Note 4    |
| Commodity contracts – net                                                      | —                                   | —                  | 12                | 12                | 2                 | Note 4    |
| Guarantees                                                                     | 12                                  | 12                 | 12                | 12                | 3                 | Note 10   |

<sup>1</sup> Total excluded items have a net carrying value at September 30, 2016 and December 31, 2015 of \$6,221 million and \$6,452 million, respectively.

## 18. Restructuring costs

Our accounting for employee separations is dependent upon how the particular program is designed. For voluntary programs, eligible separation costs are recognized at the time of employee acceptance unless the acceptance requires explicit approval by the company. For involuntary programs, eligible costs are recognized when management has approved the program, the affected employees have been properly notified and the costs are estimable.

Table of Contents

Restructuring costs for the three and nine months ended September 30, 2016 and 2015 were as follows:

| (Millions of dollars)                     | Three<br>Months<br>Ended<br>September<br>30<br>2016 | 2015 |
|-------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|------|
| Employee separations <sup>1</sup>         | \$99                                                | \$60 |
| Contract terminations <sup>1</sup>        | 9                                                   | —    |
| Long-lived asset impairments <sup>1</sup> | 158                                                 | 26   |
| Other <sup>2</sup>                        | 58                                                  | 12   |
| Total restructuring costs                 | \$324                                               | \$98 |

|                                           | Nine<br>Months<br>Ended<br>September<br>30<br>2016 | 2015  |
|-------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|-------|
| Employee separations <sup>1</sup>         | \$175                                              | \$180 |
| Contract terminations <sup>1</sup>        | 55                                                 | —     |
| Long-lived asset impairments <sup>1</sup> | 254                                                | 27    |
| Other <sup>2</sup>                        | 140                                                | 12    |
| Total restructuring costs                 | \$624                                              | \$219 |

<sup>1</sup> Recognized in Other operating (income) expenses.

<sup>2</sup> Represents costs related to our restructuring programs, primarily for accelerated depreciation, inventory write-downs, sales discounts and equipment relocation and were recognized primarily in Cost of goods sold.

Restructuring costs incurred during the first nine months of 2016 have been primarily related to actions in Resource Industries in response to continued weakness in the mining industry. In addition, costs resulted from our decision to discontinue production of on-highway vocational trucks and other restructuring actions across the company, most of which were related to our September 2015 announcement regarding significant restructuring and cost reduction actions to lower our operating costs in response to weak economic and business conditions in most of the industries we serve. For the first nine months of 2015, the restructuring costs were related to several restructuring programs across the company.

Restructuring costs for the year ended December 31, 2015 were \$898 million which included \$641 million of employee separation costs, \$127 million of long-lived asset impairments and \$82 million of defined benefit retirement plan curtailment losses and were recognized in Other operating (income) expense. In addition, in 2015 we incurred costs related to our restructuring programs of \$48 million. These costs were primarily for accelerated depreciation and

inventory write-downs and were recognized primarily in Cost of goods sold. The restructuring costs in 2015 were related to several restructuring programs across the company.

Restructuring costs are a reconciling item between Segment profit and Consolidated profit before taxes. See Note 15 for more information.

The following table summarizes the 2015 and 2016 employee separation activity:

|                        |        |
|------------------------|--------|
| (Millions of dollars)  | Total  |
| Liability balance at   | \$ 182 |
| December 31, 2014      |        |
| Increase in liability  | 641    |
| (separation charges)   |        |
| Reduction in liability | (340 ) |
| (payments)             |        |
| Liability balance at   | \$ 483 |
| December 31, 2015      |        |
| Increase in liability  | 175    |
| (separation charges)   |        |
| Reduction in liability | (507 ) |
| (payments)             |        |
| Liability balance at   | \$ 151 |
| September 30, 2016     |        |

As part of our September 2015 announcement, we offered a voluntary retirement enhancement program to qualifying U.S. employees and various voluntary separation programs outside of the U.S. and implemented additional involuntary

Table of Contents

separation programs throughout the company. As of December 31, 2015, we incurred \$379 million of employee separation costs and \$82 million of defined benefit retirement plan curtailment losses related to these programs. Additionally, for the three and nine months ended September 30, 2016 we incurred \$2 million and \$78 million of employee separation costs, respectively. Substantially all of the employee separation costs included in the December 31, 2015 liability balance were paid in the first quarter of 2016. The majority of the September 30, 2016 liability balance is expected to be paid in 2016 and 2017.

In February 2016, we made the decision to discontinue production of on-highway vocational trucks. Based on the business climate in the truck industry and a thorough evaluation of the business, the company decided it would withdraw from this market. We estimate restructuring costs incurred under the restructuring plan to be \$120 million. For the three and nine months ended September 30, 2016, we recognized \$10 million and \$92 million, respectively, of restructuring costs primarily for long-lived asset impairments related to this restructuring plan. The remaining costs are expected to be recognized in 2016 and 2017.

In the third quarter of 2016 for Resource Industries, we took additional restructuring actions, including ending the production of track drills; pursuing strategic alternatives, including a possible divestiture of room and pillar products; consolidation of two product development divisions; and additional restructuring actions. We estimate restructuring costs incurred under these restructuring plans to be \$260 million. For the three and nine months ended September 30, 2016, we incurred \$221 million of restructuring costs which included \$132 million of intangible asset impairments, \$72 million of employee separation costs and \$17 million of other related costs. The remaining costs are expected to be recognized in 2016.

## Table of Contents

### Item 2. Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations

#### Overview

Third-quarter 2016 sales and revenues were \$9.160 billion, a 16 percent decrease from third-quarter 2015 sales and revenues of \$10.962 billion. Sales declined across the company reflecting weak end-user demand in most of the industries we serve including in oil and gas, mining and rail. Profit per share for the third quarter of 2016 was \$0.48, a 49 percent decrease from third-quarter 2015 profit per share of \$0.94. Profit was \$283 million in the third quarter of 2016, a decrease of 49 percent from \$559 million in the third quarter of 2015. Profit declined primarily due to lower sales volume, but was partially offset by lower costs due to the impact from restructuring activities and other cost reduction actions.

Sales and revenues for the nine months ended September 30, 2016, were \$28.963 billion, down \$7.018 billion, or 20 percent, from \$35.981 billion for the nine months ended September 30, 2015. Profit per share for the nine months ended September 30, 2016, was \$1.88, a 56 percent decrease from profit per share of \$4.30 for the same period last year. Profit was \$1.104 billion for the nine months ended September 30, 2016, a decrease of 58 percent from \$2.606 billion for the nine months ended September 30, 2015. Profit declined primarily due to lower sales volume, but was partially offset by lower costs due to the impact from restructuring activities and other cost reduction actions.

Highlights for the third quarter of 2016 include:

Third-quarter sales and revenues were \$9.160 billion, compared with \$10.962 billion in the third quarter of 2015. Sales decreased in Energy & Transportation, Construction Industries and Resource Industries. Financial Products' revenues were about flat.

Restructuring costs were \$324 million in the third quarter of 2016 with an after-tax impact of \$0.37 per share, compared with restructuring costs of \$98 million in the third quarter of 2015 with an after-tax impact of \$0.11 per share.

Profit per share was \$0.48 in the third quarter of 2016 and excluding restructuring costs of \$0.37 per share was \$0.85 per share. Profit in the third quarter of 2015 was \$0.94 per share and excluding restructuring costs of \$0.11 per share was \$1.05 per share.

Machinery, Energy & Transportation (ME&T) operating cash flow was \$400 million in the third quarter of 2016, compared to \$766 million in the third quarter of 2015.

ME&T debt-to-capital ratio was 37.1 percent at September 30, 2016 compared to 39.0 percent at the end of 2015.

Highlights for the nine months ended September 30, 2016 include:

Sales and revenues for the nine months ended September 30, 2016, were \$28.963 billion, compared with \$35.981 billion for the nine months ended September 30, 2015. Sales decreased in Energy & Transportation, Construction Industries and Resource Industries. Financial Products' revenues were about flat.

Restructuring costs were \$624 million for the nine months ended September 30, 2016, with an after-tax impact of \$0.70 per share, compared with restructuring costs of \$219 million for the nine months ended September 30, 2015, with an after-tax impact of \$0.24 per share.

Profit per share was \$1.88 for the nine months ended September 30, 2016, and excluding restructuring costs of \$0.70 per share was \$2.58 per share. For the nine months ended September 30, 2015, profit per share was \$4.30 and excluding restructuring costs of \$0.24 per share was \$4.54 per share.

Machinery, Energy & Transportation (ME&T) operating cash flow was \$1.783 billion for the nine months ended September 30, 2016, compared to \$3.446 billion for the nine months ended September 30, 2015.

#### Restructuring Costs

In the third quarter of 2016, we continued our focus on structural cost reduction to help improve our long-term cost structure. Restructuring costs of \$324 million in the third quarter of 2016 were related to restructuring programs across the company, primarily in Resource Industries. During the first nine months of 2016, we incurred \$624 million in restructuring costs, primarily related to Resource Industries and Energy & Transportation. For 2016, we anticipate these and additional restructuring actions will result in costs of about \$800 million.

Notes:

Effective January 1, 2016, we made several changes that impacted the accounting for pension and other postemployment benefits. We also made changes to organizational accountabilities and internal reporting that impacted segment results. Our 2015 financial information has been recast to be consistent with the 2016 presentation. Glossary of terms is included on pages 79-81; first occurrence of terms shown in bold italics. Information on non-GAAP financial measures is included on page 88.

Table of Contents

Consolidated Results of Operations

THREE MONTHS ENDED SEPTEMBER 30, 2016 COMPARED WITH THREE MONTHS ENDED  
SEPTEMBER 30, 2015

CONSOLIDATED SALES AND REVENUES

The chart above graphically illustrates reasons for the change in Consolidated Sales and Revenues between the third quarter of 2015 (at left) and the third quarter of 2016 (at right). Items favorably impacting sales and revenues appear as upward stair steps with the corresponding dollar amounts above each bar, while items negatively impacting sales and revenues appear as downward stair steps with dollar amounts reflected in parentheses above each bar. Caterpillar management utilizes these charts internally to visually communicate with the company's Board of Directors and employees.

Sales and Revenues

Total sales and revenues were \$9.160 billion in the third quarter of 2016, a decline of \$1.802 billion, or 16 percent, compared with \$10.962 billion in the third quarter of 2015. The decrease was primarily due to lower sales volume, resulting from lower end-user demand attributable to continued weak commodity prices globally and economic weakness in many developing countries. While sales for both new equipment and aftermarket parts declined in all segments, most of the decrease was for new equipment. The unfavorable impact of price realization also contributed to the decline.

Changes in dealer inventories had a negative impact on sales in both the third quarter of 2016 and the third quarter of 2015. Dealer machine and engine inventories decreased about \$700 million in the third quarter of 2016 and about \$600 million in the third quarter of 2015. Dealers are independent, and there could be many reasons for changes in their inventory levels, including their expectations of future demand and product delivery times. Dealers' demand expectations take into account seasonal changes, macroeconomic conditions and other factors. Delivery times can vary based on availability of product from Caterpillar factories and product distribution centers.

Sales declined in all regions. In North America, sales decreased 20 percent primarily due to lower end-user demand for infrastructure, continuing declines in mining and the impact of low oil prices. In EAME, sales declined 20 percent primarily in Africa/Middle East due to weak economic conditions, resulting from continued low oil and other commodity prices and an uncertain investment environment. Sales decreased 22 percent in Latin America primarily due to continued widespread economic weakness across the region. Weak commodity prices and inflation have also contributed to the decline. Asia/Pacific sales declined 8 percent primarily due to lower end-user demand for most Energy & Transportation applications.

Energy & Transportation's sales declined 19 percent largely due to lower end-user demand for all applications. Construction Industries' sales decreased 13 percent primarily due to lower demand from end users and unfavorable price realization. Resource Industries' sales declined 25 percent mostly due to continued low end-user demand. Financial Products' segment revenues were about flat with the third quarter of 2015.

## Table of Contents

### CONSOLIDATED OPERATING PROFIT

The chart above graphically illustrates reasons for the change in Consolidated Operating Profit between the third quarter of 2015 (at left) and the third quarter of 2016 (at right). Items favorably impacting operating profit appear as upward stair steps with the corresponding dollar amounts above each bar, while items negatively impacting operating profit appear as downward stair steps with dollar amounts reflected in parentheses above each bar. Caterpillar management utilizes these charts internally to visually communicate with the company's Board of Directors and employees. The bar entitled Other includes consolidating adjustments and Machinery, Energy & Transportation other operating (income) expenses.

Operating profit for the third quarter of 2016 was \$481 million, compared with \$925 million in the third quarter of 2015. The decrease of \$444 million was primarily due to lower sales volume resulting from lower end-user demand attributable to continued weak commodity prices globally and economic weakness in many developing countries. In addition, restructuring costs and price realization were unfavorable. These items were partially offset by favorable period costs and variable manufacturing costs. The unfavorable price realization resulted from competitive market conditions, primarily in Construction Industries.

Period costs were lower primarily due to substantial restructuring and cost reduction actions over the past year and lower short-term incentive compensation expense. The reductions primarily impacted period manufacturing costs and selling, general and administrative expenses (SG&A). About half of the improvement in variable manufacturing costs was due to lower material costs. In addition, the impact of cost absorption was favorable as inventory decreased in the third quarter of 2015 and was about flat in the third quarter of 2016.

Restructuring costs of \$324 million in the third quarter of 2016 were related to restructuring programs across the company, primarily in Resource Industries. In the third quarter of 2015, restructuring costs were \$98 million. Short-term incentive compensation expense is directly related to financial and operational performance, measured against targets set annually. As a result of lowering the 2016 profit outlook, we expect full-year incentive compensation expense to be lower than our second-quarter estimate. As a result, no short-term incentive compensation expense was recognized in the third quarter of 2016. Third-quarter 2015 expense was about \$120 million.

### Other Profit/Loss Items

Other income/expense in the third quarter of 2016 was income of \$28 million, compared with expense of \$15 million in the third quarter of 2015. The favorable change was primarily due to the net impact from currency translation and hedging gains and losses, partially offset by lower gains from the sales of securities in the third quarter of 2016 compared to the third quarter of 2015. The favorable change in net currency translation and hedging gains and losses was primarily a result of the absence of net losses in the third quarter of 2015, mostly due to the Brazilian real. The provision for income taxes in the third quarter reflects an estimated annual tax rate of 25 percent compared to 28 percent for the third quarter of 2015 and 25.5 percent for the full-year 2015 excluding the item discussed below. The full-year rate for 2015 of 25.5 percent was lower than the third-quarter 2015 rate of 28 percent, primarily due to the permanent renewal of

Table of Contents

the U.S. research and development tax credit along with changes in the geographic mix of profits from a tax perspective in the fourth quarter.

The provision for income taxes for the third quarter of 2015 also included a \$42 million net charge for prior year tax adjustments offset by a benefit of \$43 million related to the decrease from the second-quarter estimated annual tax rate.

## Segment Information

## Sales and Revenues by Geographic Region

| (Millions of dollars)                    | Total    | %<br>Change | North<br>America | %<br>Change | Latin<br>America | %<br>Change | EAME    | %<br>Change | Asia/<br>Pacific | %<br>Change |
|------------------------------------------|----------|-------------|------------------|-------------|------------------|-------------|---------|-------------|------------------|-------------|
| Third Quarter 2016                       |          |             |                  |             |                  |             |         |             |                  |             |
| Construction Industries <sup>1</sup>     | \$3,554  | (13 )%      | \$1,655          | (19 )%      | \$287            | (20 )%      | \$789   | (18 )%      | \$823            | 14 %        |
| Resource Industries <sup>2</sup>         | 1,377    | (25 )%      | 454              | (35 )%      | 254              | (19 )%      | 303     | (29 )%      | 366              | (8 )%       |
| Energy & Transportation <sup>3</sup>     | 3,534    | (19 )%      | 1,583            | (15 )%      | 280              | (25 )%      | 1,094   | (17 )%      | 577              | (28 )%      |
| All Other Segments <sup>4</sup>          | 28       | (28 )%      | 6                | (63 )%      | —                | (100 )%     | 5       | (50 )%      | 17               | 70 %        |
| Corporate Items and Eliminations         | (30 )    | —           | (26 )            | —           | —                | —           | (3 )    | —           | (1 )             | —           |
| Machinery, Energy & Transportation Sales | 8,463    | (18 )%      | 3,672            | (20 )%      | 821              | (22 )%      | 2,188   | (20 )%      | 1,782            | (8 )%       |
| Financial Products Segment               | 749      | — %         | 466              | 3 %         | 84               | (8 )%       | 101     | — %         | 98               | (8 )%       |
| Corporate Items and Eliminations         | (52 )    | —           | (28 )            | —           | (10 )            | —           | (4 )    | —           | (10 )            | —           |
| Financial Products Revenues              | 697      | 3 %         | 438              | 9 %         | 74               | (10 )%      | 97      | 2 %         | 88               | (11 )%      |
| Consolidated Sales and Revenues          | \$9,160  | (16 )%      | \$4,110          | (18 )%      | \$895            | (21 )%      | \$2,285 | (19 )%      | \$1,870          | (8 )%       |
| Third Quarter 2015                       |          |             |                  |             |                  |             |         |             |                  |             |
| Construction Industries <sup>1</sup>     | \$4,075  |             | \$2,037          |             | \$360            |             | \$958   |             | \$720            |             |
| Resource Industries <sup>2</sup>         | 1,842    |             | 702              |             | 312              |             | 429     |             | 399              |             |
| Energy & Transportation <sup>3</sup>     | 4,352    |             | 1,858            |             | 371              |             | 1,326   |             | 797              |             |
| All Other Segments <sup>4</sup>          | 39       |             | 16               |             | 3                |             | 10      |             | 10               |             |
| Corporate Items and Eliminations         | (23 )    |             | (25 )            |             | —                |             | 1       |             | 1                |             |
| Machinery, Energy & Transportation Sales | 10,285   |             | 4,588            |             | 1,046            |             | 2,724   |             | 1,927            |             |
| Financial Products Segment               | 752      |             | 453              |             | 91               |             | 101     |             | 107              |             |
| Corporate Items and Eliminations         | (75 )    |             | (52 )            |             | (9 )             |             | (6 )    |             | (8 )             |             |
| Financial Products Revenues              | 677      |             | 401              |             | 82               |             | 95      |             | 99               |             |
|                                          | \$10,962 |             | \$4,989          |             | \$1,128          |             | \$2,819 |             | \$2,026          |             |

Consolidated Sales and  
Revenues

- <sup>1</sup> Does not include inter-segment sales of \$27 million and \$17 million in third quarter 2016 and 2015, respectively.
- <sup>2</sup> Does not include inter-segment sales of \$69 million and \$88 million in third quarter 2016 and 2015, respectively.
- <sup>3</sup> Does not include inter-segment sales of \$629 million and \$702 million in third quarter 2016 and 2015, respectively.
- <sup>4</sup> Does not include inter-segment sales of \$95 million and \$88 million in third quarter 2016 and 2015, respectively.

Table of Contents

## Sales and Revenues by Segment

| (Millions of dollars)                       | Third<br>Quarter<br>2015 | Sales<br>Volume | Price<br>Realization | Currency | Other | Third<br>Quarter<br>2016 | \$<br>Change | %<br>Change |
|---------------------------------------------|--------------------------|-----------------|----------------------|----------|-------|--------------------------|--------------|-------------|
| Construction Industries                     | \$4,075                  | \$(384 )        | \$ (165 )            | \$ 28    | \$—   | \$3,554                  | \$(521 )     | (13 )%      |
| Resource Industries                         | 1,842                    | (439 )          | (29 )                | 3        | —     | 1,377                    | (465 )       | (25 )%      |
| Energy & Transportation                     | 4,352                    | (777 )          | (19 )                | (22 )    | —     | 3,534                    | (818 )       | (19 )%      |
| All Other Segments                          | 39                       | (11 )           | —                    | —        | —     | 28                       | (11 )        | (28 )%      |
| Corporate Items and Eliminations            | (23 )                    | (9 )            | —                    | 2        | —     | (30 )                    | (7 )         |             |
| Machinery, Energy & Transportation<br>Sales | 10,285                   | (1,620 )        | (213 )               | 11       | —     | 8,463                    | (1,822 )     | (18 )%      |
| Financial Products Segment                  | 752                      | —               | —                    | —        | (3 )  | 749                      | (3 )         | — %         |
| Corporate Items and Eliminations            | (75 )                    | —               | —                    | —        | 23    | (52 )                    | 23           |             |
| Financial Products Revenues                 | 677                      | —               | —                    | —        | 20    | 697                      | 20           | 3 %         |
| Consolidated Sales and Revenues             | \$10,962                 | \$(1,620)       | \$ (213 )            | \$ 11    | \$ 20 | \$9,160                  | \$(1,802)    | (16 )%      |

## Operating Profit / (Loss) by Segment

| (Millions of dollars)                  | Third<br>Quarter<br>2016 | Third<br>Quarter<br>2015 | \$<br>Change | %<br>Change |
|----------------------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------|-------------|
| Construction Industries                | \$ 326                   | \$ 354                   | \$(28 )      | (8 )%       |
| Resource Industries                    | (77 )                    | (42 )                    | (35 )        | (83 )%      |
| Energy & Transportation                | 572                      | 683                      | (111 )       | (16 )%      |
| All Other Segments                     | (22 )                    | (11 )                    | (11 )        | (100 )%     |
| Corporate Items and Eliminations       | (433 )                   | (182 )                   | (251 )       |             |
| Machinery, Energy & Transportation     | 366                      | 802                      | (436 )       | (54 )%      |
| Financial Products Segment             | 183                      | 207                      | (24 )        | (12 )%      |
| Corporate Items and Eliminations       | (12 )                    | (22 )                    | 10           |             |
| Financial Products                     | 171                      | 185                      | (14 )        | (8 )%       |
| Consolidating Adjustments              | (56 )                    | (62 )                    | 6            |             |
| Consolidated Operating Profit / (Loss) | \$ 481                   | \$ 925                   | \$(444 )     | (48 )%      |

## Construction Industries

Construction Industries' sales were \$3.554 billion in the third quarter of 2016, a decrease of \$521 million, or 13 percent, from the third quarter of 2015. The decrease in sales was due to lower volume and unfavorable price realization. While sales declined for both new equipment and aftermarket parts, most of the decrease was for new equipment.

Sales volume declined primarily due to lower end-user demand.

Unfavorable price realization resulted from competitive market conditions. While we expect a competitive pricing environment to continue in the fourth quarter driven by excess industry capacity and an overall weak economic environment, we are not expecting further deterioration from third-quarter levels in the fourth quarter.

Sales decreased in North America, EAME and Latin America and increased in Asia/Pacific.

In North America, the sales decline was primarily due to lower end-user demand. Although residential and non-residential building construction activity have improved from 2015, we believe declines in other sectors, such as oil and gas, have resulted in the availability of used equipment to support the increased activity. The decline was also due to unfavorable price realization, resulting from competitive market conditions.

Sales in EAME decreased primarily due to the unfavorable impact of changes in dealer inventories and unfavorable price realization due to competitive market conditions. Dealers decreased inventories in the third quarter of 2016, compared to a slight increase in the third quarter of 2015. The sales decline was primarily in oil-producing economies in Africa/Middle East due to continued low oil prices and an uncertain investment environment.

## Table of Contents

In Latin America, end-user demand was down across the region, with the most significant decline in Brazil due to weak economic conditions.

Sales in Asia/Pacific were slightly higher due to an increase in end-user demand primarily in China stemming from increased government support in infrastructure and residential investment. In addition, changes in Asia/Pacific dealer inventories were favorable as dealers increased inventories in the third quarter of 2016, compared to a decrease in the third quarter of 2015.

Construction Industries' profit was \$326 million in the third quarter of 2016, compared with \$354 million in the third quarter of 2015. The decrease in profit was primarily due to unfavorable price realization resulting from competitive market conditions and lower sales volume. The decline was mostly offset by the favorable impact of restructuring and cost reduction actions, lower short-term incentive compensation expense and improved material costs.

### Resource Industries

Resource Industries' sales were \$1.377 billion in the third quarter of 2016, a decrease of \$465 million, or 25 percent, from the third quarter of 2015. The decline was primarily due to lower sales volume. While sales for both new equipment and aftermarket parts declined, nearly all of the decrease was for new equipment. Part sales have increased sequentially in each of the last two quarters.

The sales decrease was primarily due to lower end-user demand across all regions. While commodity prices have improved from their recent lows, current prices have not been sufficient to drive increased demand for new equipment. Mining customers continued to focus on improving productivity in existing mines and reducing their total capital expenditures, as they have for several years. In addition, sales of large construction equipment, including articulated trucks, are lower primarily in North America largely due to the availability of used equipment. We believe idle mining trucks on customer sites are also having a negative impact on end-user demand. As a result, sales and new orders in Resource Industries continue to be weak.

Resource Industries incurred a loss of \$77 million in the third quarter of 2016, compared with a loss of \$42 million in the third quarter of 2015. The unfavorable change was due to lower sales volume and unfavorable price realization, partially offset by the impact of restructuring and cost reduction actions, lower short-term incentive compensation expense and improved material costs.

### Energy & Transportation

Energy & Transportation's sales were \$3.534 billion in the third quarter of 2016, a decrease of \$818 million, or 19 percent, from the third quarter of 2015. The decrease was primarily the result of lower sales volume across all applications, with the most significant decrease in transportation applications.

Transportation - Sales decreased in all geographic regions primarily due to continued weakness in the rail industry, with the most significant declines in North America and Asia/Pacific. The North American rail industry continues to be depressed with a significant number of idle locomotives that impacted demand for rail services and aftermarket. In Asia/Pacific, the decrease was primarily due to the absence of a large sale of locomotives that occurred in the third quarter of 2015.

Power Generation - Sales decreased in all regions with the largest declines in EAME and Asia/Pacific. The decline in EAME was primarily a result of continued weakness in the Middle East with continued low oil prices limiting investments. We expect low oil prices will continue to limit investments in oil-producing regions of Africa/Middle East. The decline in Asia/Pacific was due to the absence of several large projects that occurred in third quarter of 2015.

Oil and Gas - Sales continued to decrease in much of the world due to low oil prices. The sales decline was most significant in Asia/Pacific and North America. In Asia/Pacific, the decrease was primarily due to lower demand for equipment used for production, drilling and gas compression. The decline in sales in North America was mostly due to lower demand for turbines used for production.

Industrial - Sales were lower primarily in EAME and North America. The decline in sales was primarily due to lower end-user demand for most industrial applications.

Energy & Transportation's profit was \$572 million in the third quarter of 2016, compared with \$683 million in the third quarter of 2015. The decline was primarily due to a decrease in sales volume, partially offset by the impact of restructuring and cost reduction actions, improved material costs and a favorable impact of cost absorption as inventory decreased in the third quarter of 2015 and was about flat in the third quarter of 2016.

Table of Contents

Financial Products Segment

Financial Products' revenues were \$749 million in the third quarter of 2016, a decrease of \$3 million, from the third quarter of 2015. Unfavorable impacts from returned or repossessed equipment, primarily in North America, and lower average earning assets in Latin America and Asia/Pacific were about offset by higher average financing rates, primarily in North America.

Financial Products' profit was \$183 million in the third quarter of 2016, compared with \$207 million in the third quarter of 2015. The decrease was primarily due to lower gains on sales of securities at Insurance Services in the third quarter of 2016, compared to the third quarter of 2015.

At the end of the third quarter of 2016, past dues at Cat Financial were 2.77 percent, compared with 2.68 percent at the end of the third quarter of 2015. Write-offs, net of recoveries, were \$29 million for the third quarter of 2016, compared with \$69 million for the third quarter of 2015.

As of September 30, 2016, Cat Financial's allowance for credit losses totaled \$346 million, or 1.28 percent of net finance receivables, compared with \$348 million, or 1.26 percent of net finance receivables at September 30, 2015. The allowance for credit losses at year-end 2015 was \$338 million, or 1.22 percent of net finance receivables.

Corporate Items and Eliminations

Expense for corporate items and eliminations was \$445 million in the third quarter of 2016, an increase of \$241 million from the third quarter of 2015. Corporate items and eliminations include: corporate-level expenses; restructuring costs; timing differences, as some expenses are reported in segment profit on a cash basis; retirement benefit costs other than service cost; currency differences for ME&T, as segment profit is reported using annual fixed exchange rates; cost of sales methodology differences as segments use a current cost methodology; and inter-segment eliminations.

The increase in expense from the third quarter of 2015 was primarily due to a \$226 million increase in restructuring costs.

Table of Contents

NINE MONTHS ENDED SEPTEMBER 30, 2016 COMPARED WITH NINE MONTHS ENDED SEPTEMBER 30, 2015

CONSOLIDATED SALES AND REVENUES

The chart above graphically illustrates reasons for the change in Consolidated Sales and Revenues between the nine months ended September 30, 2015 (at left) and the nine months ended September 30, 2016 (at right). Items favorably impacting sales and revenues appear as upward stair steps with the corresponding dollar amounts above each bar, while items negatively impacting sales and revenues appear as downward stair steps with dollar amounts reflected in parentheses above each bar. Caterpillar management utilizes these charts internally to visually communicate with the company's Board of Directors and employees.

Total sales and revenues were \$28.963 billion in the nine months ended September 30, 2016, compared with \$35.981 billion in the nine months ended September 30, 2015, a decline of \$7.018 billion, or 20 percent. The decrease was primarily due to lower sales volume attributable to continued weak commodity prices globally and economic weakness in many developing countries. Unfavorable changes in dealer machine and engine inventories also contributed to the decline in sales volume. While sales for both new equipment and aftermarket parts declined, most of the decrease was for new equipment. The unfavorable impact of price realization, primarily in Construction Industries, and currency also contributed to the decline.

The decrease in sales volume was also impacted by changes in dealer machine and engine inventories as inventories decreased about \$800 million in the nine months ended September 30, 2016, and remained about flat in the nine months ended September 30, 2015. The unfavorable impact of changes in dealer inventories was primarily in North America. We expect dealers will make substantial inventory reductions during the fourth quarter, resulting in lower year-end inventories in 2016, compared to 2015.

Dealers are independent, and there could be many reasons for changes in their inventory levels, including their expectations of future demand and product delivery times. Dealers' demand expectations take into account seasonal changes, macroeconomic conditions and other factors. Delivery times can vary based on availability of product from Caterpillar factories and product distribution centers. We believe some of the expected dealer inventory reduction is a result of increased machine availability through our factories and product distribution centers.

Sales declined in all regions. In North America, sales decreased 21 percent due to lower end-user demand primarily driven by Energy & Transportation and Construction Industries, and the unfavorable impact of changes in dealer inventories, primarily in Construction Industries. In EAME, sales declined 19 percent, primarily in Africa/Middle East due to weak economic conditions resulting from low oil and other commodity prices and an uncertain investment environment. Sales decreased 32 percent in Latin America, primarily due to widespread economic weakness across the region. The most significant decreases were in Brazil and Mexico. Asia/Pacific sales declined 15 percent, primarily due to lower end-user demand for Energy & Transportation applications and products used in mining. Energy & Transportation's sales declined 24 percent, largely due to lower end-user demand for oil and gas and transportation applications. Construction Industries' sales decreased 13 percent due to lower demand from end users, the unfavorable impact of changes in dealer inventories and unfavorable price realization. Resource Industries' sales declined 27 percent, mostly due to continued low end-user demand. Financial Products' segment revenues were about flat.

Table of Contents

**CONSOLIDATED OPERATING PROFIT**

The chart above graphically illustrates reasons for the change in Consolidated Operating Profit between the nine months ended September 30, 2015 (at left) and the nine months ended September 30, 2016 (at right). Items favorably impacting operating profit appear as upward stair steps with the corresponding dollar amounts above each bar, while items negatively impacting operating profit appear as downward stair steps with dollar amounts reflected in parentheses above each bar. Caterpillar management utilizes these charts internally to visually communicate with the company's Board of Directors and employees. The bar entitled Other includes consolidating adjustments and Machinery, Energy & Transportation other operating (income) expenses.

Operating profit for the nine months ended September 30, 2016 was \$1.760 billion, compared with \$3.960 billion in the nine months ended September 30, 2015. The decrease of \$2.200 billion was largely due to lower sales volume, including an unfavorable mix of products. In addition, price realization and restructuring costs were unfavorable. These items were partially offset by favorable period costs and variable manufacturing costs.

The unfavorable price realization resulted from competitive market conditions, primarily in Construction Industries. We continue to see competitive pressure that started in the last half of 2015 driven by excess industry capacity, unfavorable currency pressure as the impact of the strong dollar benefited competitors based outside the United States and an overall weak economic environment. We expect the current competitive pressure to continue in the fourth quarter, particularly in Construction Industries and Resource Industries. However, we are not expecting further deterioration from third-quarter levels in the fourth quarter.

Period costs were lower, primarily due to the impact from substantial restructuring and cost reduction actions and lower short-term incentive compensation expense. The reductions primarily impacted period manufacturing costs and SG&A. Variable manufacturing costs were favorable primarily due to improved material costs and the favorable impact of cost absorption. Cost absorption was favorable due to inventory decreasing more significantly in the nine months ended September 30, 2015 compared to the nine months ended September 30, 2016. We are expecting additional declines in inventory during the remainder of 2016.

Restructuring costs of \$624 million in the nine months ended September 30, 2016 were related to multiple restructuring actions across the company, primarily in Resource Industries and Energy & Transportation. In the nine months ended September 30, 2015, restructuring costs were \$219 million.

Short-term incentive compensation expense is directly related to financial and operational performance, measured against targets set annually. Expense for the nine months ended September 30, 2016 was about \$200 million compared to about \$540 million for nine months ended September 30, 2015. For the full year of 2016, we expect short-term incentive compensation expense will be about \$265 million.

**Other Profit/Loss Items**

Other income/expense in the nine months ended September 30, 2016 was income of \$112 million, compared with income of \$107 million in the nine months ended September 30, 2015. The favorable change was primarily due to the favorable net impact from currency translation and hedging gains and losses mostly offset with the absence of a gain of \$120 million on the sale of the remaining 35 percent interest in our former third-party logistics business.

Table of Contents

Currency translation and hedging net losses in the nine months ended September 30, 2016 were significantly less than the net losses during the same period in 2015.

The provision for income taxes for the first nine months of 2016 reflects an estimated annual tax rate of 25 percent compared to 28 percent for the first nine months of 2015 and 25.5 percent for the full-year 2015, excluding a \$42 million discrete tax charge recorded in the third quarter of 2015. The full-year rate for 2015 of 25.5 percent was lower than the third-quarter 2015 rate of 28 percent, primarily due to the permanent renewal of the U.S. research and development tax credit along with changes in the geographic mix of profits from a tax perspective in the fourth quarter.

## Segment Information

## Sales and Revenues by Geographic Region

| (Millions of dollars)                    | Total    | %<br>Change | North<br>America | %<br>Change | Latin<br>America | %<br>Change | EAME    | %<br>Change | Asia/<br>Pacific | %<br>Change |
|------------------------------------------|----------|-------------|------------------|-------------|------------------|-------------|---------|-------------|------------------|-------------|
| Nine Months Ended September 30, 2016     |          |             |                  |             |                  |             |         |             |                  |             |
| Construction Industries <sup>1</sup>     | \$12,023 | (13 )%      | \$5,960          | (17 )%      | \$795            | (36 )%      | \$2,646 | (11 )%      | \$2,622          | 4 %         |
| Resource Industries <sup>2</sup>         | 4,283    | (27 )%      | 1,597            | (32 )%      | 780              | (18 )%      | 882     | (33 )%      | 1,024            | (19 )%      |
| Energy & Transportation <sup>3</sup>     | 10,562   | (24 )%      | 4,958            | (21 )%      | 757              | (39 )%      | 3,138   | (20 )%      | 1,709            | (33 )%      |
| All Other Segments <sup>4</sup>          | 107      | (36 )%      | 35               | (44 )%      | 3                | (77 )%      | 23      | (50 )%      | 46               | 2 %         |
| Corporate Items and Eliminations         | (87 )    |             | (75 )            |             | (1 )             |             | (7 )    |             | (4 )             |             |
| Machinery, Energy & Transportation Sales | 26,888   | (21 )%      | 12,475           | (21 )%      | 2,334            | (32 )%      | 6,682   | (19 )%      | 5,397            | (15 )%      |
| Financial Products Segment               | 2,251    | (3 )%       | 1,398            | 3 %         | 253              | (17 )%      | 302     | (3 )%       | 298              | (17 )%      |
| Corporate Items and Eliminations         | (176 )   |             | (96 )            |             | (36 )            |             | (13 )   |             | (31 )            |             |
| Financial Products Revenues              | 2,075    | (4 )%       | 1,302            | 4 %         | 217              | (21 )%      | 289     | (2 )%       | 267              | (19 )%      |
| Consolidated Sales and Revenues          | \$28,963 | (20 )%      | \$13,777         | (19 )%      | \$2,551          | (32 )%      | \$6,971 | (19 )%      | \$5,664          | (15 )%      |

## Nine Months Ended September 30, 2015

|                                          |          |  |         |  |         |  |         |  |         |  |
|------------------------------------------|----------|--|---------|--|---------|--|---------|--|---------|--|
| Construction Industries <sup>1</sup>     | \$13,892 |  | \$7,143 |  | \$1,248 |  | \$2,988 |  | \$2,513 |  |
| Resource Industries <sup>2</sup>         | 5,861    |  | 2,337   |  | 951     |  | 1,315   |  | 1,258   |  |
| Energy & Transportation <sup>3</sup>     | 13,975   |  | 6,260   |  | 1,240   |  | 3,934   |  | 2,541   |  |
| All Other Segments <sup>4</sup>          | 166      |  | 62      |  | 13      |  | 46      |  | 45      |  |
| Corporate Items and Eliminations         | (65 )    |  | (71 )   |  | 2       |  | —       |  | 4       |  |
| Machinery, Energy & Transportation Sales | 33,829   |  | 15,731  |  | 3,454   |  | 8,283   |  | 6,361   |  |
| Financial Products Segment               | 2,332    |  | 1,360   |  | 303     |  | 311     |  | 358     |  |
| Corporate Items and Eliminations         | (180 )   |  | (105 )  |  | (29 )   |  | (17 )   |  | (29 )   |  |

Edgar Filing: CATERPILLAR INC - Form 10-Q

|                                    |          |          |         |         |         |
|------------------------------------|----------|----------|---------|---------|---------|
| Financial<br>Products Revenues     | 2,152    | 1,255    | 274     | 294     | 329     |
| Consolidated Sales and<br>Revenues | \$35,981 | \$16,986 | \$3,728 | \$8,577 | \$6,690 |

- <sup>1</sup> Does not include inter-segment sales of \$47 million and \$66 million for the nine months ended September 30, 2016 and 2015, respectively.
- <sup>2</sup> Does not include inter-segment sales of \$197 million and \$250 million for the nine months ended September 30, 2016 and 2015, respectively.
- <sup>3</sup> Does not include inter-segment sales of \$1,919 million and \$2,262 million for the nine months ended September 30, 2016 and 2015, respectively.
- <sup>4</sup> Does not include inter-segment sales of \$288 million and \$291 million for the nine months ended September 30, 2016 and 2015, respectively.

Table of Contents

## Sales and Revenues by Segment

| (Millions of dollars)                    | Nine<br>Months<br>Ended<br>September<br>30, 2015 | Sales<br>Volume | Price<br>Realization | Currency  | Other  | Nine<br>Months<br>Ended<br>September<br>30, 2016 | \$<br>Change | %<br>Change |
|------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|-----------------|----------------------|-----------|--------|--------------------------------------------------|--------------|-------------|
| Construction Industries                  | \$ 13,892                                        | \$(1,269)       | \$ (540 )            | \$ (60 )  | \$—    | \$ 12,023                                        | \$(1,869)    | (13 )%      |
| Resource Industries                      | 5,861                                            | (1,464 )        | (93 )                | (21 )     | —      | 4,283                                            | (1,578 )     | (27 )%      |
| Energy & Transportation                  | 13,975                                           | (3,271 )        | (47 )                | (95 )     | —      | 10,562                                           | (3,413 )     | (24 )%      |
| All Other Segments                       | 166                                              | (58 )           | —                    | (1 )      | —      | 107                                              | (59 )        | (36 )%      |
| Corporate Items and Eliminations         | (65 )                                            | (24 )           | —                    | 2         | —      | (87 )                                            | (22 )        |             |
| Machinery, Energy & Transportation Sales | 33,829                                           | (6,086 )        | (680 )               | (175 )    | —      | 26,888                                           | (6,941 )     | (21 )%      |
| Financial Products Segment               | 2,332                                            | —               | —                    | —         | (81 )  | 2,251                                            | (81 )        | (3 )%       |
| Corporate Items and Eliminations         | (180 )                                           | —               | —                    | —         | 4      | (176 )                                           | 4            |             |
| Financial Products Revenues              | 2,152                                            | —               | —                    | —         | (77 )  | 2,075                                            | (77 )        | (4 )%       |
| Consolidated Sales and Revenues          | \$ 35,981                                        | \$(6,086)       | \$ (680 )            | \$ (175 ) | \$(77) | \$ 28,963                                        | \$(7,018)    | (20 )%      |

## Operating Profit / (Loss) by Segment

| (Millions of dollars)                  | Nine<br>Months<br>Ended<br>September<br>30, 2016 | Nine<br>Months<br>Ended<br>September<br>30, 2015 | \$<br>Change | %<br>Change |
|----------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|--------------|-------------|
| Construction Industries                | \$ 1,316                                         | \$ 1,687                                         | \$(371 )     | (22 )%      |
| Resource Industries                    | (336 )                                           | 81                                               | (417 )       | (515 )%     |
| Energy & Transportation                | 1,584                                            | 2,649                                            | (1,065 )     | (40 )%      |
| All Other Segments                     | (43 )                                            | (36 )                                            | (7 )         | (19 )%      |
| Corporate Items and Eliminations       | (1,087 )                                         | (823 )                                           | (264 )       |             |
| Machinery, Energy & Transportation     | 1,434                                            | 3,558                                            | (2,124 )     | (60 )%      |
| Financial Products Segment             | 553                                              | 618                                              | (65 )        | (11 )%      |
| Corporate Items and Eliminations       | (44 )                                            | (20 )                                            | (24 )        |             |
| Financial Products                     | 509                                              | 598                                              | (89 )        | (15 )%      |
| Consolidating Adjustments              | (183 )                                           | (196 )                                           | 13           |             |
| Consolidated Operating Profit / (Loss) | \$ 1,760                                         | \$ 3,960                                         | \$(2,200)    | (56 )%      |

## Construction Industries

Construction Industries' sales were \$12.023 billion in the nine months ended September 30, 2016, a decrease of \$1.869 billion, or 13 percent, from the nine months ended September 30, 2015. The decrease in sales was primarily due to lower volume and unfavorable price realization. While sales declined for both new equipment and aftermarket parts, most of the decrease was for new equipment.

• The sales volume decline was primarily due to a decrease in deliveries to end users and the unfavorable impact of changes in dealer inventories. Dealer inventories remained flat in the nine months ended September 30, 2016

compared to inventories increasing in the nine months ended September 30, 2015. We expect dealers will decrease inventories during the fourth quarter of 2016, negatively impacting sales.

Price realization was unfavorable \$540 million due to competitive market conditions resulting from excess industry capacity and an overall weak economic environment and an unfavorable geographic mix of sales. We are not expecting further price deterioration in the fourth quarter.

Sales decreased in North America, Latin America and EAME and were up slightly in Asia/Pacific.

In North America, the sales decline was primarily due to lower end-user demand. Although residential and non-residential building construction activity have improved from 2015, we believe declines in other sectors, such as oil and gas, have resulted in the availability of used equipment to support the increased activity. We expect the availability of used equipment will continue to negatively impact our sales volume in the fourth quarter and into 2017. The sales decline was also due to dealers

## Table of Contents

increasing inventories in the nine months ended September 30, 2015 compared to about flat inventories in the nine months ended September 30, 2016. Unfavorable price realization resulted from competitive market conditions.

In Latin America, end-user demand was down across the region, with the most significant decline in Brazil due to weak economic conditions.

Lower sales in EAME were primarily due to the unfavorable impact of changes in dealer inventories. In addition, price realization was unfavorable across the region due to competitive market conditions. Dealer inventories remained flat in the nine months ended September 30, 2016 compared to inventories increasing in the nine months ended September 30, 2015.

Sales in Asia/Pacific were slightly higher as a result of an increase in end-user demand primarily in China stemming from increased government support in infrastructure and residential investment.

Construction Industries' profit was \$1.316 billion in the nine months ended September 30, 2016, compared with \$1.687 billion in the nine months ended September 30, 2015. The decrease in profit was primarily due to unfavorable price realization resulting from competitive market conditions and lower sales volume, including an unfavorable mix of products. The decline was partially offset by favorable costs, primarily due to the impact from restructuring and cost reduction actions, improved material costs, lower short-term incentive compensation expense and the favorable impact of cost absorption. The impact of cost absorption was favorable as inventory decreased more significantly in the nine months ended September 30, 2015 than in the nine months ended September 30, 2016.

### Resource Industries

Resource Industries' sales were \$4.283 billion in the nine months ended September 30, 2016, a decrease of \$1.578 billion, or 27 percent, from the nine months ended September 30, 2015. The decline was primarily due to lower sales volume. Sales were lower for both new equipment and aftermarket parts, most of the decrease was for new equipment. The sales decrease was primarily due to lower end-user demand across all regions. While commodity prices have improved from their recent lows, current prices have not been sufficient to drive increased demand for equipment. Mining customers continued to focus on improving productivity in existing mines and reducing their total capital expenditures, as they have for several years. We believe idle mining trucks on customer sites are also having a negative impact on end-user demand. As a result, sales and new orders in Resource Industries continue to be weak. Resource Industries incurred a loss of \$336 million in the nine months ended September 30, 2016, compared with profit of \$81 million in the nine months ended September 30, 2015. The unfavorable change was mostly due to lower sales volume, including an unfavorable mix of products. This was partially offset by lower period costs, due to the impact from restructuring and cost reduction actions, lower short-term incentive compensation expense and improved material costs.

### Energy & Transportation

Energy & Transportation's sales were \$10.562 billion in the nine months ended September 30, 2016, a decrease of \$3.413 billion, or 24 percent, from the nine months ended September 30, 2015. The decrease was primarily the result of lower sales volume. Sales decreased in all applications with oil and gas and transportation representing more than 75 percent of the Energy & Transportation decline.

Oil and Gas - Sales continued to decrease in all regions due to low oil prices. Although oil prices were low in the nine months ended September 30, 2015, and 2016, our sales during the first half of 2015 benefited from a strong order backlog. The sales decline was most significant in equipment used for production, well servicing and drilling.

Although oil prices have increased since the beginning of 2016, and the U.S. active rig count has increased since May of 2016, current price levels have not been sufficient to drive increased demand. We continue to monitor a number of factors in addition to oil prices that shape our outlook, including recent order rates, quotation activity, current backlog, trends in retail statistics and discussions with our customers. Based on all of these factors, we do not see the current price driving significant increase in demand for our products in the fourth quarter of 2016.

We expect sales in our turbine business will be lower in the fourth quarter of 2016 compared with the fourth quarter of 2015. New equipment sales related to oil are expected to continue to be weak, but we anticipate this weakness to be partially offset by higher sales into gas compression. We believe customers are continuing to reduce their maintenance

budgets, and we expect them to delay some work into 2017.

Transportation - Sales decreased in all geographic regions. The most significant decline was in North America, primarily due to significant weakness in the rail industry that we expect will persist in 2017. We believe our sales into the rail industry, including rail services and aftermarket, are being negatively impacted by idled fleets resulting from weak commodity prices. Our North American Tier 4 freight locomotive offering is available and we expect sales to be positively impacted during the

## Table of Contents

fourth quarter of 2016. In Asia/Pacific, the decrease was due to the absence of a large sale of locomotives in the nine months ended September 30, 2015 and a decline in demand for equipment used in marine applications. Demand in Latin America and EAME were also negatively impacted by the weakness in the rail industry.

Power Generation - Sales decreased in all regions. The decline is primarily due to the absence of several large projects in both North America and Asia/Pacific. The decline in EAME was primarily a result of continued weakness in the Middle East with continued low oil prices limiting investments. We expect low oil prices will continue to limit investments in oil-producing regions of Africa/Middle East. The decline in Latin America was primarily due to weak economic conditions.

Industrial - Sales were lower in North America, EAME and Latin America and about flat in Asia Pacific. The decline in sales was primarily due to lower end-user demand for most industrial applications.

Energy & Transportation's profit was \$1.584 billion in the nine months ended September 30, 2016, compared with \$2.649 billion in the nine months ended September 30, 2015. The decline was due to a decrease in sales volume, including an unfavorable mix of products, partially offset by lower costs primarily due to restructuring and cost reduction actions, lower short-term incentive compensation expense and favorable material costs. We expect the unfavorable mix of products will be more significant in the fourth quarter of 2016.

### Financial Products Segment

Financial Products' revenues were \$2.251 billion for the nine months ended September 30, 2016, a decrease of \$81 million, or 3 percent, from the nine months ended September 30, 2015. The decline was primarily due to lower average earning assets in Asia/Pacific, Latin America and EAME and an unfavorable impact from returned or repossessed equipment, primarily in North America. These decreases were partially offset by higher average earning assets in North America.

Financial Products' profit was \$553 million for the nine months ended September 30, 2016, compared with \$618 million for the nine months ended September 30, 2015. The decrease was primarily due to an unfavorable impact from returned or repossessed equipment, an unfavorable impact from lower average earning assets and a decrease in net yield on average earning assets reflecting geographic mix changes. These unfavorable impacts were partially offset by a decrease in SG&A expenses.

### Corporate Items and Eliminations

Expense for corporate items and eliminations was \$1.131 billion in the nine months ended September 30, 2016, which is an increase of \$288 million compared with the first nine months ended September 30, 2015. Corporate items and eliminations include: corporate-level expenses; restructuring costs; timing differences, as some expenses are reported in segment profit on a cash basis; retirement benefit costs other than service cost; currency differences for ME&T, as segment profit is reported using annual fixed exchange rates; cost of sales methodology differences as segments use a current cost methodology; and inter-segment eliminations.

The increase in expense from the first nine months ended September 30, 2015 was primarily due to a \$405 million increase in restructuring costs.

Table of Contents

## RESTRUCTURING COSTS

Restructuring costs for the three and nine months ended September 30, 2016 and 2015 were as follows:

| (Millions of dollars)                     | Three<br>Months<br>Ended<br>September<br>30<br>2016 | 2015 |
|-------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|------|
| Employee separations <sup>1</sup>         | \$99                                                | \$60 |
| Contract terminations <sup>1</sup>        | 9                                                   | —    |
| Long-lived asset impairments <sup>1</sup> | 158                                                 | 26   |
| Other <sup>2</sup>                        | 58                                                  | 12   |
| Total restructuring costs                 | \$324                                               | \$98 |

|                                           | Nine<br>Months<br>Ended<br>September<br>30<br>2016 | 2015  |
|-------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|-------|
| Employee separations <sup>1</sup>         | \$175                                              | \$180 |
| Contract terminations <sup>1</sup>        | 55                                                 | —     |
| Long-lived asset impairments <sup>1</sup> | 254                                                | 27    |
| Other <sup>2</sup>                        | 140                                                | 12    |
| Total restructuring costs                 | \$624                                              | \$219 |

<sup>1</sup> Recognized in Other operating (income) expenses.

<sup>2</sup> Represents costs related to our restructuring programs, primarily for accelerated depreciation, inventory write-downs, sales discounts and equipment relocation and were recognized primarily in Cost of goods sold.

Restructuring costs incurred during the first nine months of 2016 have been primarily related to actions in Resource Industries in response to continued weakness in the mining industry. In addition, costs resulted from our decision to discontinue production of on-highway vocational trucks and other restructuring actions across the company, most of which were related to our September 2015 announcement regarding significant restructuring and cost reduction actions to lower our operating costs in response to weak economic and business conditions in most of the industries we serve. For the first nine months of 2015, the restructuring costs were related to several restructuring programs across the company.

Restructuring costs for the year ended December 31, 2015 were \$898 million which included \$641 million of employee separation costs, \$127 million of long-lived asset impairments and \$82 million of defined benefit retirement

plan curtailment losses and were recognized in Other operating (income) expense. In addition, in 2015 we incurred costs related to our restructuring programs of \$48 million. These costs were primarily for accelerated depreciation and inventory write-downs and were recognized primarily in Cost of goods sold. The restructuring costs in 2015 were related to several restructuring programs across the company.

Restructuring costs are a reconciling item between Segment profit and Consolidated profit before taxes.

The following table summarizes the 2015 and 2016 employee separation activity:

|                                               |        |
|-----------------------------------------------|--------|
| (Millions of dollars)                         | Total  |
| Liability balance at<br>December 31, 2014     | \$ 182 |
| Increase in liability<br>(separation charges) | 641    |
| Reduction in liability<br>(payments)          | (340 ) |
| Liability balance at<br>December 31, 2015     | \$ 483 |
| Increase in liability<br>(separation charges) | 175    |
| Reduction in liability<br>(payments)          | (507 ) |
| Liability balance at<br>September 30, 2016    | \$ 151 |

As part of our September 2015 announcement, we offered a voluntary retirement enhancement program to qualifying U.S. employees and various voluntary separation programs outside of the U.S. and implemented additional involuntary separation

## Table of Contents

programs throughout the company. As of December 31, 2015, we incurred \$379 million of employee separation costs and \$82 million of defined benefit retirement plan curtailment losses related to these programs. Additionally, for the three and nine months ended September 30, 2016 we incurred \$2 million and \$78 million of employee separation costs, respectively. Substantially all of the employee separation costs included in the December 31, 2015 liability balance were paid in the first quarter of 2016. The majority of the September 30, 2016 liability balance is expected to be paid in 2016 and 2017.

In February 2016, we made the decision to discontinue production of on-highway vocational trucks. Based on the business climate in the truck industry and a thorough evaluation of the business, the company decided it would withdraw from this market. We estimate restructuring costs incurred under the restructuring plan to be \$120 million. For the three and nine months ended September 30, 2016, we recognized \$10 million and \$92 million, respectively, of restructuring costs primarily for long-lived asset impairments related to this restructuring plan. The remaining costs are expected to be recognized in 2016 and 2017.

In the third quarter of 2016 for Resource Industries, we took additional restructuring actions, including ending the production of track drills; pursuing strategic alternatives, including a possible divestiture of room and pillar products; consolidation of two product development divisions; and additional restructuring actions. We estimate restructuring costs incurred under these restructuring plans to be \$260 million. For the three and nine months ended September 30, 2016, we incurred \$221 million of restructuring costs which included \$132 million of intangible asset impairments, \$72 million of employee separation costs and \$17 million of other related costs. The remaining costs are expected to be recognized in 2016.

Additional restructuring actions are being contemplated including further workforce reductions during the remainder of 2016 and the consolidation and closures of manufacturing facilities occurring through 2018. For full-year 2016, we expect restructuring costs will be about \$800 million. We expect that restructuring actions will result in a benefit to operating costs, primarily SG&A expenses and Cost of goods sold of about \$800 million in 2016 compared with 2015.

## GLOSSARY OF TERMS

- All Other Segments - Primarily includes activities such as: the business strategy, product management, development, and manufacturing of filters and fluids, undercarriage, tires and rims, ground engaging tools, fluid transfer products, precision seals and rubber, and sealing and connecting components primarily for Cat products;
- 1. parts distribution; distribution services responsible for dealer development and administration including a wholly owned dealer in Japan, dealer portfolio management and ensuring the most efficient and effective distribution of machines, engines and parts; digital investments for new customer and dealer solutions that integrate data analytics with state-of-the art digital technologies while transforming the buying experience.
- 2. Consolidating Adjustments - Elimination of transactions between Machinery, Energy & Transportation and Financial Products.
- Construction Industries - A segment primarily responsible for supporting customers using machinery in infrastructure, forestry and building construction applications. Responsibilities include business strategy, product design, product management and development, manufacturing, marketing and sales and product support. The
- 3. product portfolio includes backhoe loaders, small wheel loaders, small track-type tractors, skid steer loaders, multi-terrain loaders, mini excavators, compact wheel loaders, telehandlers, select work tools, small, medium and large track excavators, wheel excavators, medium wheel loaders, compact track loaders, medium track-type tractors, track-type loaders, motor graders, pipelayers, forestry and paving products.
- 4. Currency - With respect to sales and revenues, currency represents the translation impact on sales resulting from changes in foreign currency exchange rates versus the U.S. dollar. With respect to operating profit, currency represents the net translation impact on sales and operating costs resulting from changes in foreign currency exchange rates versus the U.S. dollar. Currency includes the impact on sales and operating profit for the Machinery,

Energy & Transportation lines of business only; currency impacts on Financial Products' revenues and operating profit are included in the Financial Products' portions of the respective analyses. With respect to other income/expense, currency represents the effects of forward and option contracts entered into by the company to reduce the risk of fluctuations in exchange rates (hedging) and the net effect of changes in foreign currency exchange rates on our foreign currency assets and liabilities for consolidated results (translation).

Debt-to-Capital Ratio - A key measure of Machinery, Energy & Transportation's financial strength used by management. The metric is defined as Machinery, Energy & Transportation's short-term borrowings, long-term debt due within one year and long-term debt due after one year (debt) divided by the sum of Machinery, Energy & Transportation's debt and stockholders' equity. Debt also includes Machinery, Energy & Transportation's long-term borrowings from Financial Products.

EAME - A geographic region including Europe, Africa, the Middle East and the Commonwealth of Independent States (CIS).

Table of Contents

7. Earning Assets - Assets consisting primarily of total finance receivables net of unearned income, plus equipment on operating leases, less accumulated depreciation at Cat Financial.  
Energy & Transportation - A segment primarily responsible for supporting customers using reciprocating engines, turbines, diesel-electric locomotives and related parts across industries serving power generation, industrial, oil and gas and transportation applications, including marine and rail-related businesses. Responsibilities include business strategy, product design, product management and development, manufacturing, marketing and sales and product support of turbines and turbine-related services, reciprocating engine powered generator sets, integrated systems
8. used in the electric power generation industry, reciprocating engines and integrated systems and solutions for the marine and oil and gas industries; reciprocating engines supplied to the industrial industry as well as Cat machinery; the remanufacturing of Cat® engines and components and remanufacturing services for other companies; the business strategy, product design, product management and development, manufacturing, remanufacturing, leasing and service of diesel-electric locomotives and components and other rail-related products and services and product support of on-highway vocational trucks for North America.  
Financial Products Segment - Provides financing to customers and dealers for the purchase and lease of Cat and other equipment, as well as some financing for Caterpillar sales to dealers. Financing plans include operating and finance leases, installment sale contracts, working capital loans and wholesale financing plans. The segment also
9. provides various forms of insurance to customers and dealers to help support the purchase and lease of our equipment. Financial Products segment profit is determined on a pretax basis and includes other income/expense items.
10. Latin America - A geographic region including Central and South American countries and Mexico.  
Machinery, Energy & Transportation (ME&T) - Represents the aggregate total of Construction Industries,
11. Resource Industries, Energy & Transportation and All Other Segments and related corporate items and eliminations.  
Machinery, Energy & Transportation Other Operating (Income) Expenses - Comprised primarily of gains/losses on disposal of long-lived assets, gains/losses on divestitures and legal settlements and accruals. Restructuring costs
12. classified as other operating expenses on the Results of Operations are presented separately on the Operating Profit Comparison.
13. Pension and other postemployment benefit (OPEB) costs - The company's defined benefit pension and postretirement benefit plans.  
Period Costs - Includes period manufacturing costs, selling, general and administrative (SG&A) and research and development (R&D) expenses excluding the impact of currency. Period manufacturing costs support production but are defined as generally not having a direct relationship to short-term changes in volume. Examples include
14. machinery and equipment repair, depreciation on manufacturing assets, facility support, procurement, factory scheduling, manufacturing planning and operations management. SG&A and R&D costs are not linked to the production of goods or services and include marketing, legal and financial services and the development of new and significant improvements in products or processes.  
Price Realization - The impact of net price changes excluding currency and new product introductions. Price
15. realization includes geographic mix of sales, which is the impact of changes in the relative weighting of sales prices between geographic regions.
16. Resource Industries - A segment primarily responsible for supporting customers using machinery in mining, quarry, waste, and material handling applications. Responsibilities include business strategy, product design, product management and development, manufacturing, marketing and sales and product support. The product portfolio includes large track-type tractors, large mining trucks, hard rock vehicles, longwall miners, electric rope shovels, draglines, hydraulic shovels, track and rotary drills, highwall miners, large wheel loaders, off-highway trucks, articulated trucks, wheel tractor scrapers, wheel dozers, landfill compactors, soil compactors, material handlers, continuous miners, scoops and haulers, hardrock continuous mining systems, select work tools, machinery components and electronics and control systems. In addition to equipment, Resource Industries also develops and sells technology to provide customers fleet management systems, equipment management analytics and autonomous machine capabilities. Resource Industries also manages areas that provide services to other parts

of the company, including integrated manufacturing and research and development.

Restructuring Costs - Primarily costs for employee separation costs, long-lived asset impairments and contract terminations. These costs are included in Other Operating (Income) Expenses. Restructuring costs also include

17. other exit-related costs primarily for accelerated depreciation and equipment relocation (primarily included in Cost of goods sold) and sales discounts and payments to dealers and customers related to discontinued products (included in Sales of ME&T).

Sales Volume - With respect to sales and revenues, sales volume represents the impact of changes in the quantities sold for Machinery, Energy & Transportation as well as the incremental revenue impact of new product

18. introductions, including emissions-related product updates. With respect to operating profit, sales volume represents the impact of changes in the quantities sold for Machinery, Energy & Transportation combined with product mix as well as the net operating profit impact

## Table of Contents

of new product introductions, including emissions-related product updates. Product mix represents the net operating profit impact of changes in the relative weighting of Machinery, Energy & Transportation sales with respect to total sales.

Variable Manufacturing Costs - Represents volume-adjusted costs excluding the impact of currency. Variable manufacturing costs are defined as having a direct relationship with the volume of production. This includes material costs, direct labor and other costs that vary directly with production volume such as freight, power to operate machines and supplies that are consumed in the manufacturing process.

## LIQUIDITY AND CAPITAL RESOURCES

### Sources of funds

We generate significant capital resources from operating activities, which are the primary source of funding for our ME&T operations. Funding for these businesses is also available from commercial paper and long-term debt issuances. Financial Products' operations are funded primarily from commercial paper, term debt issuances and collections from the existing portfolio. Despite continued weaknesses in many of the industries we serve, we had positive operating cash flow in the first nine months of 2016 within both our ME&T and Financial Products' operations. On a consolidated basis, we ended the first nine months of 2016 with \$6.11 billion of cash, a decrease of \$347 million from year-end 2015. We intend to maintain a strong cash and liquidity position.

Our cash balances are held in numerous locations throughout the world with approximately \$5.0 billion held by our non-U.S. subsidiaries. Amounts held by non-U.S. subsidiaries are available for general corporate use. However, if cash held by non-U.S. subsidiaries were repatriated to the United States, U.S. tax would generally be payable net of any available foreign tax credits.

Consolidated operating cash flow for the first nine months of 2016 was \$3.96 billion, down from \$4.86 billion for the same period last year. The decrease was primarily due to lower profit before tax within our ME&T operations, which includes lower accruals for short-term incentive compensation payments in 2016, as well as higher employee separation payments in the first nine months of 2016 versus the same period a year ago. Partially offsetting these items were lower short-term incentive compensation payments in 2016 compared to the same period a year ago and positive changes to working capital. Changes to accounts payable and accounts receivable had favorable impacts to cash flow but were partially offset by lower inventory reductions in 2016 versus the same period a year ago. These reductions in working capital were primarily driven by lower sales volumes across the enterprise. See further discussion of operating cash flow under ME&T and Financial Products.

Total debt as of September 30, 2016 was \$37.11 billion, a decrease of \$903 million from year-end 2015. Debt related to ME&T decreased \$238 million in the first nine months of 2016, primarily due to the maturity of a long-term debt issuance. Debt related to Financial Products decreased \$665 million, primarily due to lower portfolio balances. In addition, during the third quarter of 2016 Cat Financial exchanged \$381 million of medium-term notes with varying interest rates and maturity dates for \$366 million of 1.93% medium-term notes due in 2021 and \$15 million of cash. We have three global credit facilities with a syndicate of banks totaling \$10.50 billion (Credit Facility) available in the aggregate to both Caterpillar and Cat Financial for general liquidity purposes. Based on management's allocation decision, which can be revised from time to time, the portion of the Credit Facility available to ME&T as of September 30, 2016 was \$2.75 billion. Information on our three Global Credit Facilities is as follows:

- In September 2016, we entered into a 364-day facility. The 364-day facility of \$3.15 billion (of which \$0.82 billion is available to ME&T) expires in September 2017.

- In September 2016, we amended and extended the three-year facility. The three-year facility of \$2.73 billion (of which \$0.72 billion is available to ME&T) now expires in September 2019.

- In September 2016, we amended and extended the five-year facility. The five-year facility of \$4.62 billion (of which \$1.21 billion is available to ME&T) now expires in September 2021.

At September 30, 2016, Caterpillar's consolidated net worth was \$15.69 billion, which was above the \$9.00 billion required under the Credit Facility. The consolidated net worth is defined as the consolidated stockholders' equity

including preferred stock but excluding the pension and other postretirement benefits balance within Accumulated other comprehensive income (loss).

At September 30, 2016, Cat Financial's covenant interest coverage ratio was 1.94 to 1. This is above the 1.15 to 1 minimum ratio calculated as (1) profit excluding income taxes, interest expense and net gain/(loss) from interest rate derivatives to (2) interest expense calculated at the end of each calendar quarter for the rolling four quarter period then most recently ended, required by the Credit Facility.

Table of Contents

In addition, at September 30, 2016, Cat Financial's covenant leverage ratio was 7.56 to 1. This is below the maximum ratio of debt to net worth of 10 to 1, calculated (1) on a monthly basis as the average of the leverage ratios determined on the last day of each of the six preceding calendar months and (2) at each December 31, required by the Credit Facility.

In the event Caterpillar or Cat Financial does not meet one or more of their respective financial covenants under the Credit Facility in the future (and are unable to obtain a consent or waiver), the syndicate of banks may terminate the commitments allocated to the party that does not meet its covenants. Additionally, in such event, certain of Cat Financial's other lenders under other loan agreements where similar financial covenants or cross default provisions are applicable, may, at their election, choose to pursue remedies under those loan agreements, including accelerating the repayment of outstanding borrowings. At September 30, 2016, there were no borrowings under the Credit Facility.

Our total credit commitments and available credit as of September 30, 2016 were:

| (Millions of dollars)              | September 30, 2016 |                                          |                       |
|------------------------------------|--------------------|------------------------------------------|-----------------------|
|                                    | Consolidated       | Machinery,<br>Energy &<br>Transportation | Financial<br>Products |
| Credit lines available:            |                    |                                          |                       |
| Global credit facilities           | \$10,500           | \$ 2,750                                 | \$ 7,750              |
| Other external                     | 3,831              | 14                                       | 3,817                 |
| Total credit lines available       | 14,331             | 2,764                                    | 11,567                |
| Less: Commercial paper outstanding | (5,936 )           | (250 )                                   | (5,686 )              |
| Less: Utilized credit              | (1,351 )           | (13 )                                    | (1,338 )              |
| Available credit                   | \$7,044            | \$ 2,501                                 | \$ 4,543              |

The other external consolidated credit lines with banks as of September 30, 2016 totaled \$3.83 billion. These committed and uncommitted credit lines, which may be eligible for renewal at various future dates or have no specified expiration date, are used primarily by our subsidiaries for local funding requirements. Caterpillar or Cat Financial may guarantee subsidiary borrowings under these lines.

In the event that Caterpillar or Cat Financial, or any of their debt securities, experiences a credit rating downgrade, it would likely result in an increase in our borrowing costs and make access to certain credit markets more difficult. In the event economic conditions deteriorate such that access to debt markets becomes unavailable, ME&T's operations would rely on cash flow from operations, use of existing cash balances, borrowings from Cat Financial and access to our Credit Facility. Our Financial Products' operations would rely on cash flow from its existing portfolio, existing cash balances, access to our Credit Facility and other credit line facilities of Cat Financial and potential borrowings from Caterpillar. In addition, we maintain a support agreement with Cat Financial, which requires Caterpillar to remain the sole owner of Cat Financial and may, under certain circumstances, require Caterpillar to make payments to Cat Financial should Cat Financial fail to maintain certain financial ratios.

#### Machinery, Energy & Transportation

Net cash provided by operating activities was \$1.78 billion in the first nine months of 2016, compared with \$3.45 billion for the same period in 2015. The decrease was primarily due to lower profit before tax, which includes lower accruals for short-term incentive compensation payments in 2016, less inventory reduction and higher employee separation payments in the first nine months of 2016 versus the same period a year ago. Partially offsetting these items were favorable changes to accounts payable as well as lower short-term incentive compensation payments in 2016 compared to the same period a year ago.

Net cash used for investing activities in the first nine months of 2016 was \$1.54 billion, compared with net cash used of \$1.06 billion in the first nine months of 2015. The increase was primarily due to ME&T's lending activity with Financial Products during 2016.

Net cash used for financing activities during the first nine months of 2016 was \$664 million, compared with net cash used of \$3.79 billion in the same period of 2015. The favorable change was primarily due to the absence of common

stock repurchases in 2015 and ME&T's borrowings from Financial Products in 2016.

Our long-term priorities for the use of cash are to maintain a strong financial position in support of our credit rating, provide capital to support growth, appropriately fund employee benefit plans, pay dividends and repurchase common stock.

Strong financial position – A key measure of ME&T's financial strength used by management is ME&T's debt-to-capital ratio. Debt-to-capital is defined as short-term borrowings, long-term debt due within one year and long-term debt due after one year (debt) divided by the sum of debt and stockholders' equity. Debt also includes ME&T's long-term borrowings from Financial Products. The debt-to-capital ratio for ME&T was 37.1 percent at September 30, 2016, within our target

## Table of Contents

range of 30 to 45 percent. ME&T's debt-to-capital ratio was 39.0 percent at December 31, 2015. The decrease in the debt-to-capital ratio was due to an increase in equity primarily related to favorable foreign currency translation adjustments from the first nine months of 2016.

Capital to support growth – Capital expenditures were \$858 million during the first nine months of 2016, compared to \$1.10 billion for the same period in 2015. We expect ME&T's capital expenditures in 2016 to be lower than 2015.

Appropriately funded employee benefit plans – At January 1, 2016, we changed our accounting principle for pension and other postretirement plans. Under the new principle, actuarial gains and losses are immediately recognized through earnings upon remeasurement, at least annually in the fourth quarter, and expected returns on plan assets are recognized using a fair value method. The change in accounting principle will have no effect on our funding requirements, cash flows or employees' benefits. See Retirement Benefits section for additional information on the change in accounting.

We made \$270 million of contributions to our pension and OPEB plans during the first nine months of 2016. We currently anticipate full-year 2016 contributions of approximately \$350 million. We made \$263 million of contributions to our pension and OPEB plans during the first nine months of 2015. We expect full year contributions in 2017 to be about \$550 million.

Paying dividends – Dividends totaled \$1.35 billion in the first nine months of 2016, representing 77 cents per share paid per quarter. Each quarter, our Board of Directors reviews the company's dividend for the applicable quarter. The Board evaluates the financial condition of the company and considers the economic outlook, corporate cash flow, the company's liquidity needs, and the health and stability of global credit markets to determine whether to maintain or change the quarterly dividend.

Common stock repurchases – In January 2014, the Board of Directors approved an authorization to repurchase up to \$10 billion of Caterpillar common stock (the 2014 Authorization), which will expire on December 31, 2018. We did not purchase any Caterpillar common stock in the first nine months of 2016. As of September 30, 2016, \$5.47 billion remained available under the 2014 Authorization. Caterpillar's basic shares outstanding as of September 30, 2016 were approximately 585 million.

## Financial Products

Financial Products' operating cash flow was \$1.26 billion in the first nine months of 2016, compared with \$1.10 billion for the same period a year ago. Net cash used for investing activities was \$872 million for the first nine months of 2016, compared with \$365 million for the same period in 2015. The change was primarily due to the impact of intercompany lending with ME&T, partially offset by lower portfolio funding requirements. Net cash used by financing activities was \$302 million for the first nine months of 2016, compared with \$492 million for the same period in 2015. The change was primarily due to the reduction of dividend payments to ME&T.

## CRITICAL ACCOUNTING POLICIES

For a discussion of the Company's critical accounting policies, see Part II, Item 7. Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations in our 2015 Annual Report on Form 10-K. Critical accounting policies that have been revised since our 2015 Annual Report on Form 10-K are as follows.

Fair values for goodwill impairment tests - We test goodwill for impairment annually, at the reporting unit level, and whenever events or circumstances make it likely that an impairment may have occurred, such as a significant adverse change in the business climate or a decision to sell all or a portion of a reporting unit. We perform our annual goodwill impairment test as of October 1 and monitor for interim triggering events on an ongoing basis.

Goodwill is reviewed for impairment utilizing either a qualitative assessment or a two-step process. If we choose to perform a qualitative assessment and determine the fair value more likely than not exceeds the carrying value, no further evaluation is necessary. For reporting units where we perform the two-step process, the first step requires us to compare the fair value of each reporting unit, which we primarily determine using an income approach based on the

present value of discounted cash flows, to the respective carrying value, which includes goodwill. If the fair value of the reporting unit exceeds its carrying value, the goodwill is not considered impaired. If the carrying value is higher than the fair value, there is an indication that an impairment may exist and the second step is required. In step two, the implied fair value of goodwill is calculated as the excess of the fair value of a reporting unit over the fair values assigned to its assets and liabilities. If the implied fair value of goodwill is less than the carrying value of the reporting unit's goodwill, the difference is recognized as an impairment loss.

The impairment test process requires valuation of the respective reporting unit, which we primarily determine using an income approach based on a discounted five year forecasted cash flow with a year-five residual value. The residual value is computed

## Table of Contents

using the constant growth method, which values the forecasted cash flows in perpetuity. The income approach is supported by a reconciliation of our calculated fair value for Caterpillar to the company's market capitalization. The assumptions about future cash flows and growth rates are based on each reporting unit's long-term forecast and are subject to review and approval by senior management. A reporting unit's discount rate is a risk-adjusted weighted average cost of capital, which we believe approximates the rate from a market participant's perspective. The estimated fair value could be impacted by changes in market conditions, interest rates, growth rates, tax rates, costs, pricing and capital expenditures.

In 2015, our Resource Industries segment had two reporting units with goodwill: Hauling & Extraction and Material Handling & Underground. The October 1, 2015 goodwill impairment test indicated the fair value of the Hauling & Extraction reporting unit exceeded its carrying value by approximately 15 percent, and the fair value of Material Handling & Underground was substantially above its carrying value.

Effective January 1, 2016, product responsibility for off-highway trucks and wheel tractor scrapers transferred from Hauling & Extraction to Material Handling & Underground, and the former Hauling & Extraction reporting unit was renamed Surface Mining & Technology. Surface Mining & Technology's product portfolio primarily includes large mining trucks, electric rope shovels, draglines, hydraulic shovels and related parts. As a result of the transfer in product responsibility, approximately \$500 million of goodwill was reassigned from Hauling & Extraction to Material Handling & Underground based on the relative fair value of the products transferred to the total fair value of Hauling & Extraction. After the reassignment of goodwill, Surface Mining & Technology and Material Handling & Underground had goodwill of approximately \$1.2 billion and \$2.4 billion, respectively, as of January 1, 2016.

Because the former Hauling & Extraction reporting unit's fair value was not substantially in excess of its carrying value as of October 1, 2015, we tested Surface Mining & Technology's goodwill for impairment as of January 1, 2016 in conjunction with the transfer of off-highway trucks and wheel tractor scrapers to Material Handling & Underground. The valuation was based on our January 1, 2016 estimates of future cash flows, which continued to reflect weakness in current economic conditions and in the mining industry. Our equipment is used to extract and haul copper, iron ore, coal, oil sands, aggregates, gold and other minerals and ores. The demand for our equipment and related parts is highly cyclical and significantly impacted by commodity prices, although the impact may vary by reporting unit. As of January 1, 2016, we expected sales and cash flows to decline in 2016, and improve over the remainder of the five year forecast period. Based on our estimates for long-term growth, profits and cash flows, the fair value of the Surface Mining & Technology reporting unit continued to exceed its carrying value by approximately 15 percent as of January 1, 2016.

Currently, we expect Surface Mining & Technology sales to decline about 20 percent in 2016 compared to 2015 as a result of the low commodity price environment and difficult financial conditions for many mining customers around the world. We considered the actual results for the nine months ending September 30, 2016 for Surface Mining & Technology along with our most recent sales forecast for 2016 which was substantially consistent with the January 1, 2016 forecast, and concluded a triggering event did not occur at September 30, 2016. No triggering events were identified for the remaining reporting units as of September 30, 2016.

An unfavorable change in our expectations for the financial performance of our reporting units, particularly long-term growth and profitability, would reduce the fair value of our reporting units. The energy and mining industries are major users of our products, including the coal, iron ore, gold, copper, oil and natural gas industries. Decisions to purchase our products are dependent upon the performance of those industries, which in turn are dependent in part on commodity prices. Lower commodity prices or industry specific circumstances that have a negative impact to the valuation assumptions may reduce the fair value of our reporting units. Should such events occur and it becomes more likely than not that a reporting unit's fair value has fallen below its carrying value, we will perform an interim goodwill impairment test(s), in addition to the annual impairment test. Future impairment tests may result in a

goodwill impairment, depending on the outcome of both step one and step two of the impairment review process. A goodwill impairment would be reported as a non-cash charge to earnings.

Given that the fair value was not substantially in excess of its carrying value in the prior test as of January 1, 2016, and that the mining industry remains weak, the Surface Mining & Technology reporting unit has the highest risk of failing step one during the annual goodwill impairment test that will be performed in the fourth quarter of 2016. This would require that we perform step two and a goodwill impairment could occur.

## Table of Contents

Postretirement benefits - Primary actuarial assumptions were determined as follows:

The U.S. expected long-term rate of return on plan assets is based on our estimate of long-term passive returns for equities and fixed income securities weighted by the allocation of our plan assets. Based on historical performance, we increase the passive returns due to our active management of the plan assets. A similar process is used to determine the rate for our non-U.S. pension plans. This rate is impacted by changes in general market conditions, but because it represents a long-term rate, it is not significantly impacted by short-term market swings. Changes in our allocation of plan assets would also impact this rate. For example, a shift to more fixed income securities would lower the rate. A decrease in the rate would increase our expense.

The assumed discount rate is used to discount future benefit obligations back to today's dollars. The U.S. discount rate is based on a benefit cash flow-matching approach and represents the rate at which our benefit obligations could effectively be settled as of our measurement date, December 31. The benefit cash flow-matching approach involves analyzing Caterpillar's projected cash flows against a high quality bond yield curve, calculated using a wide population of corporate Aa bonds available on the measurement date. The very highest and lowest yielding bonds (top and bottom 10 percent) are excluded from the analysis. A similar approach is used to determine the assumed discount rate for our most significant non-U.S. plans.

At December 31, 2015, we changed our method for calculating the service and interest cost components of net periodic benefit cost. Historically, these components were determined utilizing a single weighted-average discount rate based on the yield curve used to measure the benefit obligation at the beginning of the period. Beginning in 2016, we elected to utilize a full yield curve approach in the estimation of service and interest costs by applying the specific spot rates along the yield curve used in the determination of the benefit obligation to the relevant projected cash flows. We made this change to provide a more precise measurement of service and interest costs by improving the correlation between the projected cash flows to the corresponding spot rates along the yield curve. This change will have no impact on our pension and other postretirement liabilities and has been accounted for prospectively as a change in accounting estimate beginning in the first quarter of 2016.

Discount rates are sensitive to changes in interest rates. A decrease in the discount rate would increase our obligation and future expense.

The expected rate of compensation increase is used to develop benefit obligations using projected pay at retirement. It represents average long-term salary increases. This rate is influenced by our long-term compensation policies. An increase in the rate would increase our obligation and expense.

- The assumed health care trend rate represents the rate at which health care costs are assumed to increase and is based on historical and expected experience. Changes in our projections of future health care costs due to general economic conditions and those specific to health care (e.g., technology driven cost changes) will impact this trend rate. An increase in the trend rate would increase our obligation and expense.

The effects of actual results differing from our assumptions and the effects of changing assumptions are considered actuarial gains or losses. At January 1, 2016, we changed our accounting principle for recognizing actuarial gains and losses and expected return on plan assets for our pension and other postretirement benefit plans to a more preferable policy under U.S. GAAP. Under the new principle, actuarial gains and losses will be immediately recognized through earnings upon the annual remeasurement in the fourth quarter, or on an interim basis as triggering events warrant remeasurement. In addition, we have changed our policy for recognizing the expected returns on plan assets from a market-related value method (based on a three-year smoothing of asset returns) to a fair value method. These changes have been applied retrospectively to all periods presented.

See Note 9 for further information regarding the accounting for postretirement benefits.

## OTHER MATTERS

### Environmental and Legal Matters

The Company is regulated by federal, state and international environmental laws governing our use, transport and disposal of substances and control of emissions. In addition to governing our manufacturing and other operations, these laws often impact the development of our products, including, but not limited to, required compliance with air emissions standards applicable to internal

Table of Contents

combustion engines. We have made, and will continue to make, significant research and development and capital expenditures to comply with these emissions standards.

We are engaged in remedial activities at a number of locations, often with other companies, pursuant to federal and state laws. When it is probable we will pay remedial costs at a site, and those costs can be reasonably estimated, the investigation, remediation, and operating and maintenance costs are accrued against our earnings. Costs are accrued based on consideration of currently available data and information with respect to each individual site, including available technologies, current applicable laws and regulations, and prior remediation experience. Where no amount within a range of estimates is more likely, we accrue the minimum. Where multiple potentially responsible parties are involved, we consider our proportionate share of the probable costs. In formulating the estimate of probable costs, we do not consider amounts expected to be recovered from insurance companies or others. We reassess these accrued amounts on a quarterly basis. The amount recorded for environmental remediation is not material and is included in Accrued expenses. We believe there is no more than a remote chance that a material amount for remedial activities at any individual site, or at all the sites in the aggregate, will be required.

On January 8, 2015, the Company received a grand jury subpoena from the U.S. District Court for the Central District of Illinois. The subpoena requests documents and information from the Company relating to, among other things, financial information concerning U.S. and non-U.S. Caterpillar subsidiaries (including undistributed profits of non-U.S. subsidiaries and the movement of cash among U.S. and non-U.S. subsidiaries). The Company has received additional subpoenas relating to this investigation requesting additional documents and information relating to, among other things, the purchase and resale of replacement parts by Caterpillar Inc. and non-U.S. Caterpillar subsidiaries, dividend distributions of certain non-U.S. Caterpillar subsidiaries, and Caterpillar SARL and related structures. The Company is cooperating with this investigation. The Company is unable to predict the outcome or reasonably estimate any potential loss; however, we currently believe that this matter will not have a material adverse effect on the Company's consolidated results of operations, financial position or liquidity.

On September 10, 2014, the SEC issued to Caterpillar a subpoena seeking information concerning the Company's accounting for the goodwill relating to its acquisition of Bucyrus International Inc. in 2011 and related matters. The Company has received additional subpoenas relating to this investigation, and the Company is cooperating with the SEC regarding its ongoing investigation. The Company is unable to predict the outcome or reasonably estimate any potential loss; however, we currently believe that this matter will not have a material adverse effect on the Company's consolidated results of operations, financial position or liquidity.

On March 20, 2014, Brazil's Administrative Council for Economic Defense (CADE) published a Technical Opinion which named 18 companies and over 100 individuals as defendants, including two subsidiaries of Caterpillar Inc., MGE - Equipamentos e Serviços Ferroviários Ltda. (MGE) and Caterpillar Brasil Ltda. The publication of the Technical Opinion opened CADE's official administrative investigation into allegations that the defendants participated in anticompetitive bid activity for the construction and maintenance of metro and train networks in Brazil. While companies cannot be held criminally liable for anticompetitive conduct in Brazil, criminal charges have been brought against two current employees of MGE and one former employee of MGE involving the same conduct alleged by CADE. The Company has responded to all requests for information from the authorities. The Company is unable to predict the outcome or reasonably estimate the potential loss; however, we currently believe that this matter will not have a material adverse effect on the Company's consolidated results of operations, financial position or liquidity.

On October 24, 2013, Progress Rail received a grand jury subpoena from the U.S. District Court for the Central District of California. The subpoena requests documents and information from Progress Rail, United Industries Corporation, a wholly-owned subsidiary of Progress Rail, and Caterpillar Inc. relating to allegations that Progress Rail conducted improper or unnecessary railcar inspections and repairs and improperly disposed of parts, equipment, tools

and other items. In connection with this subpoena, Progress Rail was informed by the U.S. Attorney for the Central District of California that it is a target of a criminal investigation into potential violations of environmental laws and alleged improper business practices. The Company is cooperating with the authorities and is currently in discussions regarding a potential resolution of the matter. Although the Company believes a loss is probable, we currently believe that this matter will not have a material adverse effect on the Company's consolidated results of operations, financial position or liquidity.

In addition, we are involved in other unresolved legal actions that arise in the normal course of business. The most prevalent of these unresolved actions involve disputes related to product design, manufacture and performance liability (including claimed asbestos and welding fumes exposure), contracts, employment issues, environmental matters or intellectual property rights. The aggregate range of reasonably possible losses in excess of accrued liabilities, if any, associated with these unresolved legal actions is not material. In some cases, we cannot reasonably estimate a range of loss because there is insufficient information regarding the matter. However, we believe there is no more than a remote chance that any liability arising from these matters would be material. Although it is not possible to predict with certainty the outcome of these unresolved legal actions, we believe that these

## Table of Contents

actions will not individually or in the aggregate have a material adverse effect on our consolidated results of operations, financial position or liquidity.

### Retirement Benefits

At December 31, 2015, we changed our method for calculating the service and interest cost components of net periodic benefit cost. Historically, these components were determined utilizing a single weighted-average discount rate based on the yield curve used to measure the benefit obligation at the beginning of the period. Beginning in 2016, we elected to utilize a full yield curve approach in the estimation of service and interest costs by applying the specific spot rates along the yield curve used in the determination of the benefit obligation to the relevant projected cash flows. We made this change to provide a more precise measurement of service and interest costs by improving the correlation between the projected cash flows to the corresponding spot rates along the yield curve. This change will have no impact on our year-end defined benefit pension and OPEB liabilities and has been accounted for prospectively as a change in accounting estimate beginning in the first quarter of 2016. Compared to the method used in 2015, this change lowered defined benefit pension and OPEB expense by \$45 million and \$135 million for the three and nine months ended September 30, 2016, and we expect this change will result in lower pension and OPEB expense by approximately \$180 million for 2016.

Effective January 1, 2016, we changed our accounting principle for recognizing actuarial gains and losses and expected returns on plan assets for our defined benefit pension and OPEB plans. Prior to 2016, actuarial gains and losses were recognized as a component of Accumulated other comprehensive income (loss) and were generally amortized into earnings in future periods. Under the new principle, actuarial gains and losses will be immediately recognized through earnings upon the annual remeasurement in the fourth quarter, or on an interim basis as triggering events warrant remeasurement. In addition, we have changed our policy for recognizing the expected returns on plan assets from a market-related value method (based on a three-year smoothing of asset returns) to a fair value method. We believe these changes are preferable as they accelerate the recognition of changes in fair value of plan assets and actuarial gains and losses in our income statement, provide greater transparency of our economic obligations in accounting results and better align with the fair value principles by recognizing the effects of economic and interest rate changes on pension and OPEB assets and liabilities in the year in which the gains and losses are incurred. These changes have been applied retrospectively to prior years.

Based on market conditions as of September 30, 2016, we would be required to recognize an increase in our underfunded status of approximately \$3 billion at December 31, 2016. This would result in an increase in our Liability for postemployment benefits and the recognition in earnings of net mark-to-market losses of approximately \$3 billion pre-tax, \$2 billion net of tax or \$3.50 per share. The increase in our underfunded status and the net mark-to-market losses are primarily due to lower discount rates at September 30, 2016 (approximately 3.38 percent for our U.S. pension plans) as compared to the discount rates used at December 31, 2015. It is difficult to predict the adjustment amount, as it is dependent on several factors including the discount rate, actual returns on plan assets and other actuarial assumptions. Final determination will only be known on the measurement date, which is December 31, 2016. We recognized a benefit of \$10 million and \$29 million related to our defined benefit pension and OPEB plans for the three and nine months ended September 30, 2016, as compared to a benefit of \$23 million and \$22 million for the three and nine months ended September 30, 2015. For the first nine months of 2016, interest cost was \$128 million lower than the same period a year ago primarily due to the adoption of a full yield curve approach in the estimation of interest cost (discussed above). Service cost was \$79 million lower primarily due to fewer employees earning benefits under our plans as a result of the U.S. voluntary retirement enhancement program that was implemented in the fourth quarter of 2015. These decreases in cost are mostly offset by a lower expected return on plan assets as a result of a lower asset base in 2016 compared to 2015 and a decrease in the expected rate of return on plan assets, as well as the absence of \$26 million of curtailment gains and \$35 million of mark-to-market gains related to defined benefit plans in the U.S. and Brazil.

We made \$71 million and \$270 million of contributions to our pension and OPEB plans during the three and nine months ended September 30, 2016. We currently anticipate full-year 2016 contributions of approximately \$350 million. We made \$65 million and \$263 million of contributions to our pension and OPEB plans during the three and nine months ended September 30, 2015. At December 31, 2015, we expected contributions to our pension and OPEB plans for 2017 and 2018 to be, in aggregate, approximately \$2.4 billion. We now anticipate that the aggregate contributions for 2017 and 2018 will be approximately \$1.1 billion, which is about \$550 million for each year.

Table of Contents

## Order Backlog

At the end of the third quarter of 2016, the order backlog was \$11.6 billion, a reduction of about \$150 million from the end of the second quarter of 2016, with no significant changes in any segment. Compared to the third quarter of 2015, the order backlog has declined about \$2.1 billion with decreases in all segments. Of the total backlog, approximately \$3.6 billion at September 30, 2016 was not expected to be filled in the following twelve months.

## NON-GAAP FINANCIAL MEASURES

The following definitions are provided for the non-GAAP financial measures used in this report. These non-GAAP financial measures have no standardized meaning prescribed by U.S. GAAP and therefore are unlikely to be comparable to the calculation of similar measures for other companies. Management does not intend for these items to be considered in isolation or as a substitute for the related GAAP measures.

We have incurred restructuring costs during the three and nine month periods ending September 30, 2016 and 2015. We believe it is important to separately quantify the profit-per-share impact of restructuring costs in order for our results to be meaningful to our readers as these costs are incurred in the current year to generate longer-term benefits. Reconciliation of profit per share excluding restructuring costs to the most directly comparable GAAP measure, profit per share - diluted are as follows:

|                                                | Three<br>Months<br>Ended<br>September<br>30 |        | Nine<br>Months<br>Ended<br>September<br>30 |        |
|------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|--------|--------------------------------------------|--------|
|                                                | 2016                                        | 2015   | 2016                                       | 2015   |
| Profit per share - diluted                     | \$0.48                                      | \$0.94 | \$1.88                                     | \$4.30 |
| Per share restructuring costs <sup>1</sup>     | 0.37                                        | 0.11   | 0.70                                       | 0.24   |
| Profit per share excluding restructuring costs | \$0.85                                      | \$1.05 | \$2.58                                     | \$4.54 |

<sup>1</sup> At statutory tax rates.

## Supplemental Consolidating Data

We are providing supplemental consolidating data for the purpose of additional analysis. The data has been grouped as follows:

Consolidated – Caterpillar Inc. and its subsidiaries.

Machinery, Energy & Transportation – Caterpillar defines Machinery, Energy & Transportation as it is presented in the supplemental data as Caterpillar Inc. and its subsidiaries with Financial Products accounted for on the equity basis. Machinery, Energy & Transportation information relates to the design, manufacturing and marketing of our products. Financial Products' information relates to the financing to customers and dealers for the purchase and lease of Caterpillar and other equipment. The nature of these businesses is different, especially with regard to the financial position and cash flow items. Caterpillar management utilizes this presentation internally to highlight these differences. We also believe this presentation will assist readers in understanding our business.

Financial Products – Our finance and insurance subsidiaries, primarily Cat Financial and Insurance Services.

Consolidating Adjustments – Eliminations of transactions between Machinery, Energy & Transportation and Financial Products.

Pages 89 to 96 reconcile Machinery, Energy & Transportation with Financial Products on the equity basis to Caterpillar Inc. consolidated financial information.

Table of Contents

Caterpillar Inc.  
Supplemental Data for Results of Operations  
For the Three Months Ended September 30, 2016  
(Unaudited)  
(Millions of dollars)

|                                                                | Consolidated | Supplemental Consolidating Data<br>Machinery,<br>Energy &<br>Financial Products<br>& Transportation<br>1 | Consolidating<br>Adjustments |           |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|-----------|
| Sales and revenues:                                            |              |                                                                                                          |                              |           |
| Sales of Machinery, Energy & Transportation                    | \$ 8,463     | \$8,463                                                                                                  | \$ —                         | \$ —      |
| Revenues of Financial Products                                 | 697          | —                                                                                                        | 768                          | (71 ) 2   |
| Total sales and revenues                                       | 9,160        | 8,463                                                                                                    | 768                          | (71 )     |
| Operating costs:                                               |              |                                                                                                          |                              |           |
| Cost of goods sold                                             | 6,527        | 6,528                                                                                                    | —                            | (1 ) 3    |
| Selling, general and administrative expenses                   | 992          | 858                                                                                                      | 138                          | (4 ) 3    |
| Research and development expenses                              | 453          | 453                                                                                                      | —                            | —         |
| Interest expense of Financial Products                         | 147          | —                                                                                                        | 151                          | (4 ) 4    |
| Other operating (income) expenses                              | 560          | 258                                                                                                      | 308                          | (6 ) 3    |
| Total operating costs                                          | 8,679        | 8,097                                                                                                    | 597                          | (15 )     |
| Operating profit                                               | 481          | 366                                                                                                      | 171                          | (56 )     |
| Interest expense excluding Financial Products                  | 126          | 139                                                                                                      | —                            | (13 ) 4   |
| Other income (expense)                                         | 28           | (25 )                                                                                                    | 10                           | 43 5      |
| Consolidated profit before taxes                               | 383          | 202                                                                                                      | 181                          | —         |
| Provision (benefit) for income taxes                           | 96           | 36                                                                                                       | 60                           | —         |
| Profit of consolidated companies                               | 287          | 166                                                                                                      | 121                          | —         |
| Equity in profit (loss) of unconsolidated affiliated companies | (4 )         | (4 )                                                                                                     | —                            | —         |
| Equity in profit of Financial Products' subsidiaries           | —            | 120                                                                                                      | —                            | (120 ) 6  |
| Profit of consolidated and affiliated companies                | 283          | 282                                                                                                      | 121                          | (120 )    |
| Less: Profit (loss) attributable to noncontrolling interests   | —            | (1 )                                                                                                     | 1                            | —         |
| Profit 7                                                       | \$ 283       | \$283                                                                                                    | \$ 120                       | \$ (120 ) |

<sup>1</sup> Represents Caterpillar Inc. and its subsidiaries with Financial Products accounted for on the equity basis.

<sup>2</sup> Elimination of Financial Products' revenues earned from Machinery, Energy & Transportation.

<sup>3</sup> Elimination of net expenses recorded by Machinery, Energy & Transportation paid to Financial Products.

<sup>4</sup> Elimination of interest expense recorded between Financial Products and Machinery, Energy & Transportation.

<sup>5</sup>

Elimination of discount recorded by Machinery, Energy & Transportation on receivables sold to Financial Products and of interest earned between Machinery, Energy & Transportation and Financial Products.

<sup>6</sup> Elimination of Financial Products' profit due to equity method of accounting.

<sup>7</sup> Profit attributable to common stockholders.

---

Table of Contents

Caterpillar Inc.  
Supplemental Data for Results of Operations  
For the Nine Months Ended September 30, 2016  
(Unaudited)  
(Millions of dollars)

|                                                                | Consolidated | Supplemental Consolidating Data<br>Machinery,<br>Energy &<br>Financial Products<br>& Transportation<br>1 | Consolidating<br>Adjustments |           |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|-----------|
| Sales and revenues:                                            |              |                                                                                                          |                              |           |
| Sales of Machinery, Energy & Transportation                    | \$ 26,888    | \$26,888                                                                                                 | \$ —                         | \$ —      |
| Revenues of Financial Products                                 | 2,075        | —                                                                                                        | 2,305                        | (230 ) 2  |
| Total sales and revenues                                       | 28,963       | 26,888                                                                                                   | 2,305                        | (230 )    |
| Operating costs:                                               |              |                                                                                                          |                              |           |
| Cost of goods sold                                             | 20,768       | 20,769                                                                                                   | —                            | (1 ) 3    |
| Selling, general and administrative expenses                   | 3,203        | 2,794                                                                                                    | 424                          | (15 ) 3   |
| Research and development expenses                              | 1,429        | 1,429                                                                                                    | —                            | —         |
| Interest expense of Financial Products                         | 447          | —                                                                                                        | 458                          | (11 ) 4   |
| Other operating (income) expenses                              | 1,356        | 462                                                                                                      | 914                          | (20 ) 3   |
| Total operating costs                                          | 27,203       | 25,454                                                                                                   | 1,796                        | (47 )     |
| Operating profit                                               | 1,760        | 1,434                                                                                                    | 509                          | (183 )    |
| Interest expense excluding Financial Products                  | 385          | 422                                                                                                      | —                            | (37 ) 4   |
| Other income (expense)                                         | 112          | (72 )                                                                                                    | 38                           | 146 5     |
| Consolidated profit before taxes                               | 1,487        | 940                                                                                                      | 547                          | —         |
| Provision (benefit) for income taxes                           | 372          | 198                                                                                                      | 174                          | —         |
| Profit of consolidated companies                               | 1,115        | 742                                                                                                      | 373                          | —         |
| Equity in profit (loss) of unconsolidated affiliated companies | (7 )         | (7 )                                                                                                     | —                            | —         |
| Equity in profit of Financial Products' subsidiaries           | —            | 369                                                                                                      | —                            | (369 ) 6  |
| Profit of consolidated and affiliated companies                | 1,108        | 1,104                                                                                                    | 373                          | (369 )    |
| Less: Profit (loss) attributable to noncontrolling interests   | 4            | —                                                                                                        | 4                            | —         |
| Profit 7                                                       | \$ 1,104     | \$1,104                                                                                                  | \$ 369                       | \$ (369 ) |

<sup>1</sup> Represents Caterpillar Inc. and its subsidiaries with Financial Products accounted for on the equity basis.

<sup>2</sup> Elimination of Financial Products' revenues earned from Machinery, Energy & Transportation.

<sup>3</sup> Elimination of net expenses recorded by Machinery, Energy & Transportation paid to Financial Products.

<sup>4</sup> Elimination of interest expense recorded between Financial Products and Machinery, Energy & Transportation.

<sup>5</sup> Elimination of discount recorded by Machinery, Energy & Transportation on receivables sold to Financial Products and of interest earned between Machinery, Energy & Transportation and Financial Products.

<sup>6</sup> Elimination of Financial Products' profit due to equity method of accounting.

<sup>7</sup> Profit attributable to common stockholders.

---

Table of Contents

Caterpillar Inc.  
Supplemental Data for Results of Operations  
For the Three Months Ended September 30, 2015  
(Unaudited)  
(Millions of dollars)

|                                                                | Consolidated | Supplemental Consolidating Data<br>Machinery,<br>Energy &<br>Transportation<br><sup>1</sup> | Financial<br>Products | Consolidating<br>Adjustments |                |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------------|----------------|
| Sales and revenues:                                            |              |                                                                                             |                       |                              |                |
| Sales of Machinery, Energy & Transportation                    | \$ 10,285    | \$10,285                                                                                    | \$ —                  | \$ —                         |                |
| Revenues of Financial Products                                 | 677          | —                                                                                           | 772                   | (95)                         | ) <sup>2</sup> |
| Total sales and revenues                                       | 10,962       | 10,285                                                                                      | 772                   | (95)                         | )              |
| Operating costs:                                               |              |                                                                                             |                       |                              |                |
| Cost of goods sold                                             | 7,872        | 7,871                                                                                       | —                     | 1                            | ) <sup>3</sup> |
| Selling, general and administrative expenses                   | 1,129        | 1,015                                                                                       | 139                   | (25)                         | ) <sup>3</sup> |
| Research and development expenses                              | 513          | 513                                                                                         | —                     | —                            |                |
| Interest expense of Financial Products                         | 142          | —                                                                                           | 144                   | (2)                          | ) <sup>4</sup> |
| Other operating (income) expenses                              | 381          | 84                                                                                          | 304                   | (7)                          | ) <sup>3</sup> |
| Total operating costs                                          | 10,037       | 9,483                                                                                       | 587                   | (33)                         | )              |
| Operating profit                                               | 925          | 802                                                                                         | 185                   | (62)                         | )              |
| Interest expense excluding Financial Products                  | 127          | 138                                                                                         | —                     | (11)                         | ) <sup>4</sup> |
| Other income (expense)                                         | (15)         | ) (87)                                                                                      | ) 21                  | 51                           | ) <sup>5</sup> |
| Consolidated profit before taxes                               | 783          | 577                                                                                         | 206                   | —                            |                |
| Provision (benefit) for income taxes                           | 218          | 156                                                                                         | 62                    | —                            |                |
| Profit of consolidated companies                               | 565          | 421                                                                                         | 144                   | —                            |                |
| Equity in profit (loss) of unconsolidated affiliated companies | (3)          | ) (3)                                                                                       | ) —                   | —                            |                |
| Equity in profit of Financial Products' subsidiaries           | —            | 144                                                                                         | —                     | (144)                        | ) <sup>6</sup> |
| Profit of consolidated and affiliated companies                | 562          | 562                                                                                         | 144                   | (144)                        | )              |
| Less: Profit (loss) attributable to noncontrolling interests   | 3            | 3                                                                                           | —                     | —                            |                |
| Profit <sup>7</sup>                                            | \$ 559       | \$559                                                                                       | \$ 144                | \$ (144)                     | )              |

<sup>1</sup> Represents Caterpillar Inc. and its subsidiaries with Financial Products accounted for on the equity basis.

<sup>2</sup> Elimination of Financial Products' revenues earned from Machinery, Energy & Transportation.

<sup>3</sup> Elimination of net expenses recorded by Machinery, Energy & Transportation paid to Financial Products.

<sup>4</sup> Elimination of interest expense recorded between Financial Products and Machinery, Energy & Transportation.

<sup>5</sup>

Elimination of discount recorded by Machinery, Energy & Transportation on receivables sold to Financial Products and of interest earned between Machinery, Energy & Transportation and Financial Products.

<sup>6</sup> Elimination of Financial Products' profit due to equity method of accounting.

<sup>7</sup> Profit attributable to common stockholders.

---

Table of Contents

Caterpillar Inc.  
Supplemental Data for Results of Operations  
For the Nine Months Ended September 30, 2015  
(Unaudited)  
(Millions of dollars)

|                                                                | Consolidated | Supplemental Consolidating Data<br>Machinery,<br>Energy &<br>Transportation<br>1 | Financial<br>Products | Consolidating<br>Adjustments |     |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------------|-----|
| Sales and revenues:                                            |              |                                                                                  |                       |                              |     |
| Sales of Machinery, Energy & Transportation                    | \$ 33,829    | \$33,829                                                                         | \$ —                  | \$ —                         |     |
| Revenues of Financial Products                                 | 2,152        | —                                                                                | 2,390                 | (238)                        | ) 2 |
| Total sales and revenues                                       | 35,981       | 33,829                                                                           | 2,390                 | (238)                        | )   |
| Operating costs:                                               |              |                                                                                  |                       |                              |     |
| Cost of goods sold                                             | 25,306       | 25,306                                                                           | —                     | —                            |     |
| Selling, general and administrative expenses                   | 3,696        | 3,269                                                                            | 444                   | (17)                         | ) 3 |
| Research and development expenses                              | 1,547        | 1,547                                                                            | —                     | —                            |     |
| Interest expense of Financial Products                         | 440          | —                                                                                | 445                   | (5)                          | ) 4 |
| Other operating (income) expenses                              | 1,032        | 149                                                                              | 903                   | (20)                         | ) 3 |
| Total operating costs                                          | 32,021       | 30,271                                                                           | 1,792                 | (42)                         | )   |
| Operating profit                                               | 3,960        | 3,558                                                                            | 598                   | (196)                        | )   |
| Interest expense excluding Financial Products                  | 381          | 413                                                                              | —                     | (32)                         | ) 4 |
| Other income (expense)                                         | 107          | (79)                                                                             | ) 22                  | 164                          | 5   |
| Consolidated profit before taxes                               | 3,686        | 3,066                                                                            | 620                   | —                            |     |
| Provision (benefit) for income taxes                           | 1,074        | 885                                                                              | 189                   | —                            |     |
| Profit of consolidated companies                               | 2,612        | 2,181                                                                            | 431                   | —                            |     |
| Equity in profit (loss) of unconsolidated affiliated companies | 1            | 1                                                                                | —                     | —                            |     |
| Equity in profit of Financial Products' subsidiaries           | —            | 429                                                                              | —                     | (429)                        | ) 6 |
| Profit of consolidated and affiliated companies                | 2,613        | 2,611                                                                            | 431                   | (429)                        | )   |
| Less: Profit (loss) attributable to noncontrolling interests   | 7            | 5                                                                                | 2                     | —                            |     |
| Profit 7                                                       | \$ 2,606     | \$2,606                                                                          | \$ 429                | \$ (429)                     | )   |

1 Represents Caterpillar Inc. and its subsidiaries with Financial Products accounted for on the equity basis.

2 Elimination of Financial Products' revenues earned from Machinery, Energy & Transportation.

3 Elimination of net expenses recorded by Machinery, Energy & Transportation paid to Financial Products.

4 Elimination of interest expense recorded between Financial Products and Machinery, Energy & Transportation.

- <sup>5</sup> Elimination of discount recorded by Machinery, Energy & Transportation on receivables sold to Financial Products and of interest earned between Machinery, Energy & Transportation and Financial Products.
  - <sup>6</sup> Elimination of Financial Products' profit due to equity method of accounting.
  - <sup>7</sup> Profit attributable to common stockholders.
-

Table of Contents

Caterpillar Inc.  
Supplemental Data for Financial Position  
At September 30, 2016  
(Unaudited)  
(Millions of dollars)

|                                                   | Consolidated | Supplemental Consolidating Data<br>Machinery,<br>Energy & Financial<br>Transportation Products<br>1 | Consolidating<br>Adjustments |                         |
|---------------------------------------------------|--------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------|
| <b>Assets</b>                                     |              |                                                                                                     |                              |                         |
| <b>Current assets:</b>                            |              |                                                                                                     |                              |                         |
| Cash and short-term investments                   | \$ 6,113     | \$ 4,894                                                                                            | \$ 1,219                     | \$ —                    |
| Receivables – trade and other                     | 5,797        | 4,098                                                                                               | 1,291                        | 408 <sup>2,3</sup>      |
| Receivables – finance                             | 8,719        | —                                                                                                   | 12,011                       | (3,292) <sup>3</sup>    |
| Prepaid expenses and other current assets         | 1,892        | 951                                                                                                 | 954                          | (13) <sup>4</sup>       |
| Inventories                                       | 9,478        | 9,478                                                                                               | —                            | —                       |
| Total current assets                              | 31,999       | 19,421                                                                                              | 15,475                       | (2,897) <sup>4</sup>    |
| Property, plant and equipment – net               | 15,680       | 11,194                                                                                              | 4,486                        | —                       |
| Long-term receivables – trade and other           | 1,102        | 153                                                                                                 | 146                          | 803 <sup>2,3</sup>      |
| Long-term receivables – finance                   | 13,835       | —                                                                                                   | 14,668                       | (833) <sup>3</sup>      |
| Investments in Financial Products subsidiaries    | —            | 4,367                                                                                               | —                            | (4,367) <sup>5</sup>    |
| Noncurrent deferred and refundable income taxes   | 2,579        | 3,311                                                                                               | 89                           | (821) <sup>6</sup>      |
| Intangible assets                                 | 2,453        | 2,448                                                                                               | 5                            | —                       |
| Goodwill                                          | 6,725        | 6,708                                                                                               | 17                           | —                       |
| Other assets                                      | 2,029        | 648                                                                                                 | 1,394                        | (13) <sup>4</sup>       |
| Total assets                                      | \$ 76,402    | \$ 48,250                                                                                           | \$ 36,280                    | \$ (8,128) <sup>4</sup> |
| <b>Liabilities</b>                                |              |                                                                                                     |                              |                         |
| <b>Current liabilities:</b>                       |              |                                                                                                     |                              |                         |
| Short-term borrowings                             | \$ 6,965     | \$ 263                                                                                              | \$ 6,702                     | \$ —                    |
| Short-term borrowings with consolidated companies | —            | 1,000                                                                                               | 1,817                        | (2,817) <sup>7</sup>    |
| Accounts payable                                  | 4,713        | 4,593                                                                                               | 187                          | (67) <sup>8</sup>       |
| Accrued expenses                                  | 3,022        | 2,747                                                                                               | 275                          | —                       |
| Accrued wages, salaries and employee benefits     | 1,286        | 1,257                                                                                               | 29                           | —                       |
| Customer advances                                 | 1,161        | 1,161                                                                                               | —                            | —                       |
| Other current liabilities                         | 1,620        | 1,188                                                                                               | 446                          | (14) <sup>6,9</sup>     |
| Long-term debt due within one year                | 6,523        | 553                                                                                                 | 5,970                        | —                       |
| Total current liabilities                         | 25,290       | 12,762                                                                                              | 15,426                       | (2,898) <sup>7</sup>    |
| Long-term debt due after one year                 | 23,622       | 8,462                                                                                               | 15,190                       | (30) <sup>7</sup>       |
| Liability for postemployment benefits             | 8,499        | 8,499                                                                                               | —                            | —                       |
| Other liabilities                                 | 3,276        | 2,812                                                                                               | 1,297                        | (833) <sup>6,9</sup>    |
| Total liabilities                                 | 60,687       | 32,535                                                                                              | 31,913                       | (3,761) <sup>7</sup>    |
| <b>Commitments and contingencies</b>              |              |                                                                                                     |                              |                         |
| <b>Stockholders' equity</b>                       |              |                                                                                                     |                              |                         |
| Common stock                                      | 5,266        | 5,266                                                                                               | 918                          | (918) <sup>5</sup>      |

Edgar Filing: CATERPILLAR INC - Form 10-Q

|                                               |           |           |           |             |              |
|-----------------------------------------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-------------|--------------|
| Treasury stock                                | (17,544 ) | (17,544 ) | —         | —           |              |
| Profit employed in the business               | 29,450    | 29,450    | 4,109     | (4,109 )    | <sup>5</sup> |
| Accumulated other comprehensive income (loss) | (1,527 )  | (1,527 )  | (788 )    | 788         | <sup>5</sup> |
| Noncontrolling interests                      | 70        | 70        | 128       | (128 )      | <sup>5</sup> |
| Total stockholders' equity                    | 15,715    | 15,715    | 4,367     | (4,367 )    |              |
| Total liabilities and stockholders' equity    | \$ 76,402 | \$ 48,250 | \$ 36,280 | \$ (8,128 ) |              |

<sup>1</sup> Represents Caterpillar Inc. and its subsidiaries with Financial Products accounted for on the equity basis.

<sup>2</sup> Elimination of receivables between Machinery, Energy & Transportation and Financial Products.

<sup>3</sup> Reclassification of Machinery, Energy & Transportation's trade receivables purchased by Financial Products and Financial Products' wholesale inventory receivables.

<sup>4</sup> Elimination of Machinery, Energy & Transportation's insurance premiums that are prepaid to Financial Products.

<sup>5</sup> Elimination of Financial Products' equity which is accounted for by Machinery, Energy & Transportation on the equity basis.

<sup>6</sup> Reclassification reflecting required netting of deferred tax assets / liabilities by taxing jurisdiction.

<sup>7</sup> Elimination of debt between Machinery, Energy & Transportation and Financial Products.

<sup>8</sup> Elimination of payables between Machinery, Energy & Transportation and Financial Products.

<sup>9</sup> Elimination of prepaid insurance in Financial Products' other liabilities.

Table of Contents

Caterpillar Inc.  
Supplemental Data for Financial Position  
At December 31, 2015  
(Unaudited)  
(Millions of dollars)

|                                                   | Consolidated | Supplemental Consolidating Data<br>Machinery,<br>Energy & Financial<br>Transportation Products<br>1 | Consolidating<br>Adjustments |                      |
|---------------------------------------------------|--------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|----------------------|
| Assets                                            |              |                                                                                                     |                              |                      |
| Current assets:                                   |              |                                                                                                     |                              |                      |
| Cash and short-term investments                   | \$ 6,460     | \$ 5,340                                                                                            | \$ 1,120                     | \$ —                 |
| Receivables – trade and other                     | 6,695        | 3,564                                                                                               | 345                          | 2,786 <sup>2,3</sup> |
| Receivables – finance                             | 8,991        | —                                                                                                   | 12,891                       | (3,900) <sup>3</sup> |
| Prepaid expenses and other current assets         | 1,662        | 817                                                                                                 | 850                          | (5) <sup>4</sup>     |
| Inventories                                       | 9,700        | 9,700                                                                                               | —                            | —                    |
| Total current assets                              | 33,508       | 19,421                                                                                              | 15,206                       | (1,119) )            |
| Property, plant and equipment – net               | 16,090       | 11,888                                                                                              | 4,202                        | —                    |
| Long-term receivables – trade and other           | 1,170        | 121                                                                                                 | 215                          | 834 <sup>2,3</sup>   |
| Long-term receivables – finance                   | 13,651       | —                                                                                                   | 14,516                       | (865) <sup>3</sup>   |
| Investments in Financial Products subsidiaries    | —            | 3,888                                                                                               | —                            | (3,888) <sup>5</sup> |
| Noncurrent deferred and refundable income taxes   | 2,489        | 3,208                                                                                               | 74                           | (793) <sup>6</sup>   |
| Intangible assets                                 | 2,821        | 2,815                                                                                               | 6                            | —                    |
| Goodwill                                          | 6,615        | 6,598                                                                                               | 17                           | —                    |
| Other assets                                      | 1,998        | 612                                                                                                 | 1,400                        | (14) <sup>4</sup>    |
| Total assets                                      | \$ 78,342    | \$ 48,551                                                                                           | \$ 35,636                    | \$ (5,845) )         |
| Liabilities                                       |              |                                                                                                     |                              |                      |
| Current liabilities:                              |              |                                                                                                     |                              |                      |
| Short-term borrowings                             | \$ 6,967     | \$ 9                                                                                                | \$ 6,958                     | \$ —                 |
| Short-term borrowings with consolidated companies | —            | —                                                                                                   | 1,096                        | (1,096) <sup>7</sup> |
| Accounts payable                                  | 5,023        | 4,848                                                                                               | 193                          | (18) <sup>8</sup>    |
| Accrued expenses                                  | 3,116        | 2,841                                                                                               | 275                          | —                    |
| Accrued wages, salaries and employee benefits     | 1,994        | 1,951                                                                                               | 43                           | —                    |
| Customer advances                                 | 1,146        | 1,146                                                                                               | —                            | —                    |
| Dividends payable                                 | 448          | 448                                                                                                 | —                            | —                    |
| Other current liabilities                         | 1,671        | 1,315                                                                                               | 373                          | (17) <sup>6,9</sup>  |
| Long-term debt due within one year                | 5,877        | 517                                                                                                 | 5,360                        | —                    |
| Total current liabilities                         | 26,242       | 13,075                                                                                              | 14,298                       | (1,131) )            |
| Long-term debt due after one year                 | 25,169       | 8,991                                                                                               | 16,209                       | (31) <sup>7</sup>    |
| Liability for postemployment benefits             | 8,843        | 8,843                                                                                               | —                            | —                    |
| Other liabilities                                 | 3,203        | 2,757                                                                                               | 1,241                        | (795) <sup>6,9</sup> |
| Total liabilities                                 | 63,457       | 33,666                                                                                              | 31,748                       | (1,957) )            |
| Commitments and contingencies                     |              |                                                                                                     |                              |                      |
| Stockholders' equity                              |              |                                                                                                     |                              |                      |

Edgar Filing: CATERPILLAR INC - Form 10-Q

|                                               |           |           |           |           |                |
|-----------------------------------------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|----------------|
| Common stock                                  | 5,238     | 5,238     | 911       | (911      | ) <sup>5</sup> |
| Treasury stock                                | (17,640   | ) (17,640 | ) —       | —         |                |
| Profit employed in the business               | 29,246    | 29,246    | 3,747     | (3,747    | ) <sup>5</sup> |
| Accumulated other comprehensive income (loss) | (2,035    | ) (2,035  | ) (896    | ) 896     | <sup>5</sup>   |
| Noncontrolling interests                      | 76        | 76        | 126       | (126      | ) <sup>5</sup> |
| Total stockholders' equity                    | 14,885    | 14,885    | 3,888     | (3,888    | )              |
| Total liabilities and stockholders' equity    | \$ 78,342 | \$ 48,551 | \$ 35,636 | \$ (5,845 | )              |

<sup>1</sup> Represents Caterpillar Inc. and its subsidiaries with Financial Products accounted for on the equity basis.

<sup>2</sup> Elimination of receivables between Machinery, Energy & Transportation and Financial Products.

<sup>3</sup> Reclassification of Machinery, Energy & Transportation's trade receivables purchased by Financial Products and Financial Products' wholesale inventory receivables.

<sup>4</sup> Elimination of Machinery, Energy & Transportation's insurance premiums that are prepaid to Financial Products.

<sup>5</sup> Elimination of Financial Products' equity which is accounted for by Machinery, Energy & Transportation on the equity basis.

<sup>6</sup> Reclassification reflecting required netting of deferred tax assets / liabilities by taxing jurisdiction.

<sup>7</sup> Elimination of debt between Machinery, Energy & Transportation and Financial Products.

<sup>8</sup> Elimination of payables between Machinery, Energy & Transportation and Financial Products.

<sup>9</sup> Elimination of prepaid insurance in Financial Products' other liabilities.

Table of Contents

Caterpillar Inc.  
Supplemental Data for Cash Flow  
For the Nine Months Ended September 30, 2016  
(Unaudited)  
(Millions of dollars)

|                                                                            | Consolidated | Supplemental Consolidating Data<br>Machinery,<br>Energy & Financial<br>Transportation Products | Consolidating<br>Adjustments |                        |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------|
| Cash flow from operating activities:                                       |              |                                                                                                |                              |                        |
| Profit of consolidated and affiliated companies                            | \$ 1,108     | \$ 1,104                                                                                       | \$ 373                       | \$ (369 ) <sup>2</sup> |
| Adjustments for non-cash items:                                            |              |                                                                                                |                              |                        |
| Depreciation and amortization                                              | 2,255        | 1,591                                                                                          | 664                          | —                      |
| Undistributed profit of Financial Products                                 | —            | (362 )                                                                                         | —                            | 362 <sup>3</sup>       |
| Other                                                                      | 640          | 503                                                                                            | (11 )                        | 148 <sup>4</sup>       |
| Changes in assets and liabilities, net of acquisitions and divestitures:   |              |                                                                                                |                              |                        |
| Receivables - trade and other                                              | 1,128        | 252                                                                                            | 42                           | 834 <sup>4, 5</sup>    |
| Inventories                                                                | 331          | 335                                                                                            | —                            | (4 ) <sup>4</sup>      |
| Accounts payable                                                           | (163 )       | (130 )                                                                                         | 16                           | (49 ) <sup>4</sup>     |
| Accrued expenses                                                           | (153 )       | (93 )                                                                                          | (60 )                        | —                      |
| Accrued wages, salaries and employee benefits                              | (727 )       | (713 )                                                                                         | (14 )                        | —                      |
| Customer advances                                                          | (24 )        | (24 )                                                                                          | —                            | —                      |
| Other assets – net                                                         | (141 )       | (278 )                                                                                         | 102                          | 35 <sup>4</sup>        |
| Other liabilities – net                                                    | (291 )       | (402 )                                                                                         | 146                          | (35 ) <sup>4</sup>     |
| Net cash provided by (used for) operating activities                       | 3,963        | 1,783                                                                                          | 1,258                        | 922                    |
| Cash flow from investing activities:                                       |              |                                                                                                |                              |                        |
| Capital expenditures - excluding equipment leased to others                | (807 )       | (802 )                                                                                         | (6 )                         | 1 <sup>4</sup>         |
| Expenditures for equipment leased to others                                | (1,393 )     | (56 )                                                                                          | (1,377 )                     | 40 <sup>4</sup>        |
| Proceeds from disposals of leased assets and property, plant and equipment | 572          | 89                                                                                             | 510                          | (27 ) <sup>4</sup>     |
| Additions to finance receivables                                           | (6,911 )     | —                                                                                              | (8,888 )                     | 1,977 <sup>5</sup>     |
| Collections of finance receivables                                         | 6,968        | —                                                                                              | 9,308                        | (2,340 ) <sup>5</sup>  |
| Net intercompany purchased receivables                                     | —            | —                                                                                              | 580                          | (580 ) <sup>5</sup>    |
| Proceeds from sale of finance receivables                                  | 55           | —                                                                                              | 55                           | —                      |
| Net intercompany borrowings                                                | —            | (716 )                                                                                         | (999 )                       | 1,715 <sup>6</sup>     |
| Investments and acquisitions (net of cash acquired)                        | (72 )        | (72 )                                                                                          | —                            | —                      |
| Proceeds from sale of securities                                           | 304          | 25                                                                                             | 279                          | —                      |
| Investments in securities                                                  | (339 )       | (22 )                                                                                          | (317 )                       | —                      |
| Other – net                                                                | 5            | 15                                                                                             | (17 )                        | 7 <sup>8</sup>         |
| Net cash provided by (used for) investing activities                       | (1,618 )     | (1,539 )                                                                                       | (872 )                       | 793                    |
| Cash flow from financing activities:                                       |              |                                                                                                |                              |                        |
| Dividends paid                                                             | (1,348 )     | (1,348 )                                                                                       | (7 )                         | 7 <sup>7</sup>         |
| Distribution to noncontrolling interests                                   | (8 )         | (8 )                                                                                           | —                            | —                      |
| Common stock issued, including treasury shares reissued                    | (54 )        | (54 )                                                                                          | 7                            | (7 ) <sup>8</sup>      |

Edgar Filing: CATERPILLAR INC - Form 10-Q

|                                                                           |          |          |          |          |                |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------------|
| Excess tax benefit from stock-based compensation                          | 12       | 12       | —        | —        |                |
| Net intercompany borrowings                                               | —        | 999      | 716      | (1,715   | ) <sup>6</sup> |
| Proceeds from debt issued (original maturities greater than three months) | 4,430    | 6        | 4,424    | —        |                |
| Payments on debt (original maturities greater than three months)          | (5,602   | ) (525   | ) (5,077 | ) —      |                |
| Short-term borrowings – net (original maturities three months or less)    | (111     | ) 254    | (365     | ) —      |                |
| Net cash provided by (used for) financing activities                      | (2,681   | ) (664   | ) (302   | ) (1,715 | )              |
| Effect of exchange rate changes on cash                                   | (11      | ) (26    | ) 15     | —        |                |
| Increase (decrease) in cash and short-term investments                    | (347     | ) (446   | ) 99     | —        |                |
| Cash and short-term investments at beginning of period                    | 6,460    | 5,340    | 1,120    | —        |                |
| Cash and short-term investments at end of period                          | \$ 6,113 | \$ 4,894 | \$ 1,219 | \$ —     |                |

<sup>1</sup> Represents Caterpillar Inc. and its subsidiaries with Financial Products accounted for on the equity basis.

<sup>2</sup> Elimination of Financial Products' profit after tax due to equity method of accounting.

<sup>3</sup> Elimination of non-cash adjustment for the undistributed earnings from Financial Products.

<sup>4</sup> Elimination of non-cash adjustments and changes in assets and liabilities related to consolidated reporting.

<sup>5</sup> Reclassification of Financial Products' cash flow activity from investing to operating for receivables that arose from the sale of inventory.

<sup>6</sup> Elimination of net proceeds and payments to/from Machinery, Energy & Transportation and Financial Products.

<sup>7</sup> Elimination of dividend from Financial Products to Machinery, Energy & Transportation.

<sup>8</sup> Elimination of change in investment and common stock related to Financial Products.

Table of Contents

Caterpillar Inc.  
Supplemental Data for Cash Flow  
For the Nine Months Ended September 30, 2015  
(Unaudited)  
(Millions of dollars)

|                                                                            | Consolidated | Supplemental Consolidating Data<br>Machinery,<br>Energy & Transportation <sup>1</sup> | Financial Products | Consolidating Adjustments |                 |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|---------------------------|-----------------|
| Cash flow from operating activities:                                       |              |                                                                                       |                    |                           |                 |
| Profit of consolidated and affiliated companies                            | \$ 2,613     | \$ 2,611                                                                              | \$ 431             | \$ (429 )                 | <sup>2</sup>    |
| Adjustments for non-cash items:                                            |              |                                                                                       |                    |                           |                 |
| Depreciation and amortization                                              | 2,272        | 1,608                                                                                 | 664                | —                         |                 |
| Undistributed profit of Financial Products                                 | —            | (179 )                                                                                | —                  | 179                       | <sup>3</sup>    |
| Other                                                                      | 323          | 221                                                                                   | (92 )              | 194                       | <sup>4</sup>    |
| Changes in assets and liabilities, net of acquisitions and divestitures:   |              |                                                                                       |                    |                           |                 |
| Receivables - trade and other                                              | 614          | 342                                                                                   | (65 )              | 337                       | <sup>4, 5</sup> |
| Inventories                                                                | 840          | 845                                                                                   | —                  | (5 )                      | <sup>4</sup>    |
| Accounts payable                                                           | (893 )       | (988 )                                                                                | 56                 | 39                        | <sup>4</sup>    |
| Accrued expenses                                                           | (25 )        | (41 )                                                                                 | 3                  | 13                        | <sup>4</sup>    |
| Accrued wages, salaries and employee benefits                              | (704 )       | (695 )                                                                                | (9 )               | —                         |                 |
| Customer advances                                                          | (36 )        | (36 )                                                                                 | —                  | —                         |                 |
| Other assets – net                                                         | 96           | 1                                                                                     | 58                 | 37                        | <sup>4</sup>    |
| Other liabilities – net                                                    | (236 )       | (243 )                                                                                | 57                 | (50 )                     | <sup>4</sup>    |
| Net cash provided by (used for) operating activities                       | 4,864        | 3,446                                                                                 | 1,103              | 315                       |                 |
| Cash flow from investing activities:                                       |              |                                                                                       |                    |                           |                 |
| Capital expenditures - excluding equipment leased to others                | (946 )       | (938 )                                                                                | (9 )               | 1                         | <sup>4</sup>    |
| Expenditures for equipment leased to others                                | (1,251 )     | (157 )                                                                                | (1,116 )           | 22                        | <sup>4</sup>    |
| Proceeds from disposals of leased assets and property, plant and equipment | 473          | 51                                                                                    | 429                | (7 )                      | <sup>4</sup>    |
| Additions to finance receivables                                           | (7,099 )     | —                                                                                     | (9,434 )           | 2,335                     | <sup>5, 8</sup> |
| Collections of finance receivables                                         | 6,849        | —                                                                                     | 9,001              | (2,152 )                  | <sup>5</sup>    |
| Net intercompany purchased receivables                                     | —            | —                                                                                     | 758                | (758 )                    | <sup>5</sup>    |
| Proceeds from sale of finance receivables                                  | 101          | —                                                                                     | 101                | —                         |                 |
| Net intercompany borrowings                                                | —            | (21 )                                                                                 | 1                  | 20                        | <sup>6</sup>    |
| Investments and acquisitions (net of cash acquired)                        | (140 )       | (140 )                                                                                | —                  | —                         |                 |
| Proceeds from sale of businesses and investments (net of cash sold)        | 174          | 180                                                                                   | —                  | (6 )                      | <sup>8</sup>    |
| Proceeds from sale of securities                                           | 238          | 16                                                                                    | 222                | —                         |                 |
| Investments in securities                                                  | (296 )       | (20 )                                                                                 | (276 )             | —                         |                 |
| Other – net                                                                | (76 )        | (34 )                                                                                 | (42 )              | —                         |                 |
| Net cash provided by (used for) investing activities                       | (1,973 )     | (1,063 )                                                                              | (365 )             | (545 )                    |                 |
| Cash flow from financing activities:                                       |              |                                                                                       |                    |                           |                 |
| Dividends paid                                                             | (1,309 )     | (1,309 )                                                                              | (250 )             | 250                       | <sup>7</sup>    |

Edgar Filing: CATERPILLAR INC - Form 10-Q

|                                                                           |          |   |          |   |          |                    |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|---|----------|---|----------|--------------------|
| Distribution to noncontrolling interests                                  | (7       | ) | (7       | ) | —        | —                  |
| Common stock issued, including treasury shares reissued                   | 34       |   | 34       |   | —        | —                  |
| Treasury shares purchased                                                 | (2,025   | ) | (2,025   | ) | —        | —                  |
| Excess tax benefit from stock-based compensation                          | 20       |   | 20       |   | —        | —                  |
| Net intercompany borrowings                                               | —        |   | (1       | ) | 21       | (20 ) <sup>6</sup> |
| Proceeds from debt issued (original maturities greater than three months) | 4,082    |   | 3        |   | 4,079    | —                  |
| Payments on debt (original maturities greater than three months)          | (6,772   | ) | (513     | ) | (6,259   | ) —                |
| Short-term borrowings – net (original maturities three months or less)    | 1,922    |   | 5        |   | 1,917    | —                  |
| Net cash provided by (used for) financing activities                      | (4,055   | ) | (3,793   | ) | (492     | ) 230              |
| Effect of exchange rate changes on cash                                   | (131     | ) | (99      | ) | (32      | ) —                |
| Increase (decrease) in cash and short-term investments                    | (1,295   | ) | (1,509   | ) | 214      | —                  |
| Cash and short-term investments at beginning of period                    | 7,341    |   | 6,317    |   | 1,024    | —                  |
| Cash and short-term investments at end of period                          | \$ 6,046 |   | \$ 4,808 |   | \$ 1,238 | \$ —               |

<sup>1</sup> Represents Caterpillar Inc. and its subsidiaries with Financial Products accounted for on the equity basis.

<sup>2</sup> Elimination of Financial Products' profit after tax due to equity method of accounting.

<sup>3</sup> Elimination of non-cash adjustment for the undistributed earnings from Financial Products.

<sup>4</sup> Elimination of non-cash adjustments and changes in assets and liabilities related to consolidated reporting.

<sup>5</sup> Reclassification of Financial Products' cash flow activity from investing to operating for receivables that arose from the sale of inventory.

<sup>6</sup> Elimination of net proceeds and payments to/from Machinery, Energy & Transportation and Financial Products.

<sup>7</sup> Elimination of dividend from Financial Products to Machinery, Energy & Transportation.

<sup>8</sup> Elimination of proceeds received from Financial Products related to Machinery, Energy & Transportation's sale of businesses and investments.

## Table of Contents

### Forward-looking Statements

Certain statements in this Form 10-Q relate to future events and expectations and are forward-looking statements within the meaning of the Private Securities Litigation Reform Act of 1995. Words such as “believe,” “estimate,” “will be,” “will,” “would,” “expect,” “anticipate,” “plan,” “project,” “intend,” “could,” “should” or other similar words or expressions of forward-looking statements. All statements other than statements of historical fact are forward-looking statements, including, without limitation, statements regarding our outlook, projections, forecasts or trend descriptions. These statements do not guarantee future performance, and we do not undertake to update our forward-looking statements.

Caterpillar’s actual results may differ materially from those described or implied in our forward-looking statements based on a number of factors, including, but not limited to: (i) global and regional economic conditions and economic conditions in the industries we serve; (ii) government monetary or fiscal policies and infrastructure spending; (iii) commodity price changes, component price increases, fluctuations in demand for our products or significant shortages of component products; (iv) disruptions or volatility in global financial markets limiting our sources of liquidity or the liquidity of our customers, dealers and suppliers; (v) political and economic risks, commercial instability and events beyond our control in the countries in which we operate; (vi) failure to maintain our credit ratings and potential resulting increases to our cost of borrowing and adverse effects on our cost of funds, liquidity, competitive position and access to capital markets; (vii) our Financial Products segment’s risks associated with the financial services industry; (viii) changes in interest rates or market liquidity conditions; (ix) an increase in delinquencies, repossessions or net losses of Cat Financial’s customers; (x) new regulations or changes in financial services regulations; (xi) a failure to realize, or a delay in realizing, all of the anticipated benefits of our acquisitions, joint ventures or divestitures; (xii) international trade policies and their impact on demand for our products and our competitive position; (xiii) our ability to develop, produce and market quality products that meet our customers’ needs; (xiv) the impact of the highly competitive environment in which we operate on our sales and pricing; (xv) failure to realize all of the anticipated benefits from initiatives to increase our productivity, efficiency and cash flow and to reduce costs; (xvi) additional restructuring costs or a failure to realize anticipated savings or benefits from past or future cost reduction actions; (xvii) inventory management decisions and sourcing practices of our dealers and our OEM customers; (xviii) compliance with environmental laws and regulations; (xix) alleged or actual violations of trade or anti-corruption laws and regulations; (xx) additional tax expense or exposure; (xxi) currency fluctuations; (xxii) our or Cat Financial’s compliance with financial covenants; (xxiii) increased pension plan funding obligations; (xxiv) union disputes or other employee relations issues; (xxv) significant legal proceedings, claims, lawsuits or government investigations; (xxvi) changes in accounting standards; (xxvii) failure or breach of IT security; (xxviii) adverse effects of unexpected events including natural disasters; and (xxix) other factors described in more detail under “Item 1A. Risk Factors” in our Form 10-K filed with the SEC on February 16, 2016 for the year ended December 31, 2015.

### Item 3. Quantitative and Qualitative Disclosures About Market Risk

The information required by this Item is incorporated by reference from Note 4 – “Derivative financial instruments and risk management” included in Part I, Item 1 and Management’s Discussion and Analysis included in Part I, Item 2 of this Form 10-Q.

### Item 4. Controls and Procedures

#### Evaluation of disclosure controls and procedures

An evaluation was performed under the supervision and with the participation of the company’s management, including the Chief Executive Officer (CEO) and Chief Financial Officer (CFO), of the effectiveness of the design and operation of the company’s disclosure controls and procedures, as that term is defined in Rule 13a-15(e) under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, as of the end of the period covered by this quarterly report. Based on

that evaluation, the CEO and CFO concluded that the company's disclosure controls and procedures are effective as of the end of the period covered by this quarterly report.

Changes in internal control over financial reporting

During the third quarter of 2016, there has been no change in the company's internal control over financial reporting that has materially affected, or is reasonably likely to materially affect, the company's internal control over financial reporting.

Table of Contents

## PART II. OTHER INFORMATION

## Item 1. Legal Proceedings

The information required by this Item is incorporated by reference from Note 13 – "Environmental and legal matters" included in Part I, Item 1 of this Form 10-Q.

## Item 2. Unregistered Sales of Equity Securities and Use of Proceeds

## Issuer Purchases of Equity Securities

No shares were repurchased during the third quarter of 2016.

## Other Purchases of Equity Securities

| Period               | Total<br>Number<br>of Shares<br>Purchased <sup>1</sup> | Average<br>Price<br>Paid per<br>Share | Total Number<br>of Shares Purchased<br>Under the Program | Approximate<br>Dollar<br>Value of<br>Shares that<br>may yet be<br>Purchased<br>under the<br>Program |
|----------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| July 1-31, 2016      | 2,022                                                  | \$ 81.74                              | N/A                                                      | N/A                                                                                                 |
| August 1-31, 2016    | 3,858                                                  | \$ 82.88                              | N/A                                                      | N/A                                                                                                 |
| September 1-30, 2016 | 10,220                                                 | \$ 81.68                              | N/A                                                      | N/A                                                                                                 |
| Total                | 16,100                                                 | \$ 81.98                              |                                                          |                                                                                                     |

<sup>1</sup> Represents shares delivered back to issuer for the payment of taxes resulting from the vesting of restricted stock units for employees and Directors.

## Non-U.S. Employee Stock Purchase Plans

As of September 30, 2016, we had 27 employee stock purchase plans (the "EIP Plans") that are administered outside the United States for our non-U.S. employees, which had approximately 13,000 active participants in the aggregate. During the third quarter of 2016, approximately 226,000 shares of Caterpillar common stock were purchased by the EIP Plans pursuant to the terms of such plans.

Table of Contents

Item 6. Exhibits

- 10.1 2016 364-Day Facility dated as of September 8, 2016 (incorporated by reference from Exhibit 99.1 to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed September 14, 2016).
- 10.2 Local Currency Addendum to the 2016 364-Day Facility dated as of September 8, 2016 (incorporated by reference from Exhibit 99.2 to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed September 14, 2016).
- 10.3 Japan Local Currency Addendum to the 364-Day Facility dated as of September 8, 2016 (incorporated by reference from Exhibit 99.3 to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed September 14, 2016).
- 10.4 Omnibus Amendment No. 1 to Amended and Restated Credit Agreement (Three-Year Facility), Amendment No. 1 to Local Currency Addendum and Amendment No. 1 to Japan Local Currency Addendum dated as of September 8, 2016 (incorporated by reference from Exhibit 99.4 to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed September 14, 2016).
- 10.5 Omnibus Amendment No. 1 to Amended and Restated Credit Agreement (Five-Year Facility), Amendment No. 1 to Local Currency Addendum and Amendment No. 1 to Japan Local Currency Addendum dated as of September 8, 2016 (incorporated by reference from Exhibit 99.5 to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed September 14, 2016).
- 11 Computations of Earnings per Share (included in Note 11 of this Form 10-Q filed for the quarter ended September 30, 2016).
- 31.1 Certification of Douglas R. Oberhelman, Chairman and Chief Executive Officer of Caterpillar Inc., as required pursuant to Section 302 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002.
- 31.2 Certification of Bradley M. Halverson, Group President and Chief Financial Officer of Caterpillar Inc., as required pursuant to Section 302 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002.
- 32 Certification of Douglas R. Oberhelman, Chairman and Chief Executive Officer of Caterpillar Inc. and Bradley M. Halverson, Group President and Chief Financial Officer of Caterpillar Inc., as required pursuant to Section 906 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002.
- 101.INS XBRL Instance Document
- 101.SCH XBRL Taxonomy Extension Schema Document
- 101.CAL XBRL Taxonomy Extension Calculation Linkbase Document
- 101.DEF XBRL Taxonomy Extension Definition Linkbase Document
- 101.LAB XBRL Taxonomy Extension Label Linkbase Document
- 101.PRE XBRL Taxonomy Extension Presentation Linkbase Document

Table of Contents

SIGNATURES

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, the Registrant has duly caused this report to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned thereunto duly authorized.

CATERPILLAR INC.

|                  |                                                      |                                                 |
|------------------|------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| November 2, 2016 | /s/ Douglas R. Oberhelman<br>(Douglas R. Oberhelman) | Chairman and Chief Executive Officer            |
| November 2, 2016 | /s/ Bradley M. Halverson<br>(Bradley M. Halverson)   | Group President and Chief Financial Officer     |
| November 2, 2016 | /s/ James B. Buda<br>(James B. Buda)                 | Executive Vice President, Law and Public Policy |
| November 2, 2016 | /s/ Jananne A. Copeland<br>(Jananne A. Copeland)     | Chief Accounting Officer                        |

Table of Contents

EXHIBIT INDEX

Exhibit No. Description

|         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|---------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 10.1    | 2016 364-Day Facility dated as of September 8, 2016 (incorporated by reference from Exhibit 99.1 to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed September 14, 2016).                                                                                                                                                                   |
| 10.2    | Local Currency Addendum to the 2016 364-Day Facility dated as of September 8, 2016 (incorporated by reference from Exhibit 99.2 to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed September 14, 2016).                                                                                                                                    |
| 10.3    | Japan Local Currency Addendum to the 364-Day Facility dated as of September 8, 2016 (incorporated by reference from Exhibit 99.3 to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed September 14, 2016).                                                                                                                                   |
| 10.4    | Omnibus Amendment No. 1 to Amended and Restated Credit Agreement (Three-Year Facility), Amendment No. 1 to Local Currency Addendum and Amendment No. 1 to Japan Local Currency Addendum dated as of September 8, 2016 (incorporated by reference from Exhibit 99.4 to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed September 14, 2016). |
| 10.5    | Omnibus Amendment No. 1 to Amended and Restated Credit Agreement (Five-Year Facility), Amendment No. 1 to Local Currency Addendum and Amendment No. 1 to Japan Local Currency Addendum dated as of September 8, 2016 (incorporated by reference from Exhibit 99.5 to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed September 14, 2016).  |
| 11      | Computations of Earnings per Share (included in Note 11 of this Form 10-Q filed for the quarter ended September 30, 2016).                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| 31.1    | Certification of Douglas R. Oberhelman, Chairman and Chief Executive Officer of Caterpillar Inc., as required pursuant to Section 302 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002.                                                                                                                                                                  |
| 31.2    | Certification of Bradley M. Halverson, Group President and Chief Financial Officer of Caterpillar Inc., as required pursuant to Section 302 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002.                                                                                                                                                            |
| 32      | Certification of Douglas R. Oberhelman, Chairman and Chief Executive Officer of Caterpillar Inc. and Bradley M. Halverson, Group President and Chief Financial Officer of Caterpillar Inc., as required pursuant to Section 906 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002.                                                                        |
| 101.INS | XBRL Instance Document                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| 101.SCH | XBRL Taxonomy Extension Schema Document                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| 101.CAL | XBRL Taxonomy Extension Calculation Linkbase Document                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| 101.DEF | XBRL Taxonomy Extension Definition Linkbase Document                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| 101.LAB | XBRL Taxonomy Extension Label Linkbase Document                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| 101.PRE | XBRL Taxonomy Extension Presentation Linkbase Document                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| 101     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |